当当影响力作家评选 2017 教育名家榜第一名





總統國

行

XI

H.





www.1kao.com.cn

018846 利开涂层内有香验码

✓▲ 中国人民大学出版社

三名剑 之 总纲 《雅思口语真经总纲》

ICATION

美**铃 美 径** 让学习更高效

三名剑之口语 9分标准解析 评判领先 16字真经箴言实力保障 逻辑简洁迅速 滔滔不绝 高分词汇句型 提分优先

# SPEAKING

劉洪 派 编

Y

中国人民大学出版社 ·北京·

#### 图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

雅思口语真经总纲/刘洪波,杨帅编著.一北京:中国人民大学出版社,2019.1 ISBN 978-7-300-26483-7

I. ①雅… Ⅱ. ①刘… ②杨… Ⅲ. ①IELTS-口语-自学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①H319.9

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2018)第272497号

- •本书中所有理论、概念均系作者原创,如果引用需注明出处。
- 本书著作权归作者所有,版权归中国人民大学出版社,任何复印、引用均需征求著作权人及 版权持有人同时同意。

#### 雅思口语真经总纲

刘洪波 杨帅 编著

rasi kou	iyu ∠nei	njing 2	Longgo	ing

出版	发行	中国人民大学出版社		
社	址	北京中关村大街31号	邮政编码 100080	
电	话	010-62511242 (总编室)	010-62511770 (质管部)	
		010-82501766 (邮购部)	010-62514148 (门市部)	
		010-62515195 (发行公司)	010-62515275 (盗版举报)	
[XX]	址	http://www.crup.com.cn		
		http://www.lkao.com.cn(中国1考网)		
经	销	新华书店		
ED	刷	北京玺诚印务有限公司		
规	格	185mm×260mm 16开本	版 次 2019年1月第1版	
ED	张	13.25	印 次 2019年1月第1次印刷	
字	数	285 000	定价 55.00元	

封面无防伪标均为盗版

侵权必究

```
版权所有
```

印装差错 负责调换

# 推 荐 序

在雅思培训行业,刘洪波老师最为推崇的就是以评分标准为切入点进行雅思教学。在刘老师看 来,研究评分标准,就是对考试目的的最好理解,就是帮助学生取得高分的最佳途径。溯本求源, 雅思口语的评分标准,体现了雅思考试对于语言交互性的高度重视,这也是全球的院校普遍认可雅 思成绩的重要原因。

雅思评分标准,强调"流利度""词汇""语法""发音",你还在担心自己的口语不够好吗?雅思 官方已经给你指出了口语学习的方向。把这四条全部做好,或者努力做好其中的几条,即使你不参 加雅思考试,这些也能成为你口语交流的利器。雅思考试之所以权威,不仅仅是因为成绩准确,更 重要的是,它对普通英语学习者以及众多的考试都具有指导意义。

而毕业于中国传媒大学英语播音专业的杨帅老师,在流利度和发音方面,有着得天独厚的优势。 听杨帅老师说口语,宛如听 CCTV 9 的现场播报。虽然英语没有普通话,但是这样的口音无疑令人 艳羡。除此之外,杨帅老师英语基础扎实,对学术充满渴望。他的"每日练三句"展示了他在镜头前 的从容、词汇的丰富和对语法的精益求精,难怪他能够三次斩获雅思口语 9 分。

杨帅老师用自己超强的实力和不懈的个人努力,验证了雅思考试的权威性和科学性。而学为贵 教育,之所以能被雅思官方评为白金级合作伙伴,也是因为群英荟萃、学术领先。

很多人喜欢杨帅老师,很多人喜欢刘洪波老师,很多人喜欢学为贵的课,这也许就是真经派的 学术魅力。

这本雅思口语书包括四章。第一章是考试介绍,解释了很多在雅思考试官方说明中没有详述的 内容,是杨帅老师的亲身经历和众多考生的考试需求。第二章是官方评分标准。只有读懂评分标准, 才能真正读懂雅思。第三章是雅思口语真经十六字总纲。真经派总是会把眼花缭乱的技法精髓,用 精炼的文字表述成门规,这样才能让考生把技法记住,然后慢慢理解和应用。第四章是素材大全。 这部分内容完整覆盖了口语题库,并提供了回答示范。

你可以跟随杨帅老师的录音,体会雅思口语9分表现;也可以沿着书中的技法,举一反三,征 战雅思,斩获高分。

在本书的编写过程中,赵小锐、刘畅、谭乐、刘娟、付晓楠、田杨、冯涛、成岩、程玲、李慧芳、 刘素良、焦磊、柏立明、焦鸿、曹爱丽、张靖娴、袁伟、李海静、刘伟、杨志、贾玉梅、李悦、张璐、 焦丽娜、尚莉、袁乐、邓素娟、殷博、戚旗、史策、范欣南、张儒雅、胡瑞青、沈小燕、张强、 董哲羽、何运娟、陈星樵、高尚勇、冯鑫、李前领也参与了资料收集及部分编写工作,在此一并 感谢。

吕蕾微信公众号: lvlei1973 吕蕾微博: http://weibo.com/lvlei1973 吕蕾一直播ID: 76304044

 $\hat{X}$ 



藤面

真经派口语门规

首雨軟入 句型為重 自然放松 罗菲沟通



# Part 2话题一览表

* a time a child made you laugh [P117]	* a special trip P143
* a fashionable person P118	★ something you do P144
* a person who can speak a foreign language P119	* an activity P145
* a person who can do well at work P120	* something you would like to do P146
* a person who always travels by plane P121	* a situation P146
★ a person whose job is important P122	* something you've wanted to do [P147]
* a family member P122	★ a time when you were very busy P148
* a friend P123	★ a positive change (P149)
* a famous foreign person (P124)	$\star$ a time when someone or something made a lot
* a famous person in your country P125	of noise P150
★ a helpful person P126	★ a time you got a little angry P151
* a creative inventor or musician [P127]	$\star$ a situation when someone gave you a piece of
* a person who moved in with you P127	useful advice [P151]
* a foreign country P128	★ a gift P152
* a place P129	★ an electronic device P153
* a street P130	★ an important letter P154
* a cafe or restaurant P131	★ a photo P155
* a historical building P131	$\star$ something that you saved money to buy P155
★ a tall building (P132)	★ a piece of equipment P156
★ a park or garden P133	★ an educational TV programme P157
* an important place P134	★ an unforgettable advertisement [P158]
$\star$ a change that would improve the area where you	★ something you would like to learn more P158
live P135	★ a small and successful company P159
★ a long journey P136	★ a song P160
★ a long walk P137	★ an indoor game P161
★ a paid job P137	★ an environmental law P162
* a success P138	★ a kind of weather you like P162
* a team P139	★ an important invention P163
$\star$ a time when you felt surprised to meet someone P140	★ a sport P164
$\star$ a time that you and your friend had a disagreement P141	★ an interesting tradition [P165]
* an artistic activity P141	★ a change you would like to see P166
* an educational trip P142	★ a historical event [P167]

# 目 录

#### 第1章 雅思口语考试介绍 /1

雅思口语考试的时间和地点 /1

雅思口语考试的流程和内容 /2

口语"变题季"是什么意思? /3

如果对成绩不满意,可以申请复议吗? /3

#### 第2章 官方评分标准真经 /5

Fluency & Coherence 流利度和连贯性 /6

连贯性/6

流利度/13

三十五个习语/41\*

Lexical Resource 词汇资源 /27

三十组同义形容词/28

三十个动词词组/38

Grammar Range & Accuracy 语法多样性和准确性 /45

八大经典语法错误 /45

三十二个语法功能句型 /53

Pronunciation 发音 /61

单个音/62 失去爆破(特殊连读)/66 中国不同地区考生易错音/65 语调高低变化/66 连读(普通连读)/65

第3章 雅思口语真经十六字总纲 /73

背诵输入 /73

词汇 /74

观点 /75

句子/75

句型为重 /75

自然放松 /75

逻辑沟通 /76

#### 第4章 口语素材大全 /79

Part 1 回答五大准则 /79

Part 1 练习方法 /80

Part 1 范例答案 /80

Work or study /80 Hometown /82 Home/Accommodation /84 Fruits and vegetables /85 Family /90 Friends /91 Teachers /93 Sunshine /94 Rainy days /95 Politeness /96 Mirrors /97 News/97 Letters or emails /98 Magazine /99 Sleep /100 Maps /101 Part 2 回答九大准则 /116 Part 2 练习方法 /117 Part 2 范例答案 /117 Part 3 回答七大准则 /167 Part 3 练习方法 /168

Transportation /86 Bus or taxi /87 Music /88 Sports /89 Jewelry /102 Housework /103 History /105 Daily routine /106 Birthday /108 Advertisements /109 Time management /110 Boating /112 Computer and Internet /113 Teenagers /114 Saving money /115

Part 3 范例答案 /169 \*
Work, careers, companies /169
Family, friends, neighbours, roommates, socialising, teamwork /174
Transport, commuting /178
Countryside and cities, accommodation, buildings /179
Hobbies, relaxation, lifestyles, sports, travel /182
Entertainment, celebrities, role models /184
Internet, technology /187
Children, young people, old people /190
Food /193
Study, language, education, skills /195
Emotions, changes, experiences /198
Media, TV, news /200



# 第1章

# 雅思口语考试介绍

# (○ 雅思口语考试的时间和地点

◆时间:可能安排在笔试前一周至笔试后一周之间的任意一天,但会尽量安排在笔试当天下午或笔 试次日全天。

虽然考生可以在网上预约自己想要的口语考试时间,但这不一定是实际的考试时间。建议大家 在拿到准考证后,再次确认口试的日期和时间,以免耽误考试。

◆ 地点: 口语考试地点有可能不同于笔试地点。

比此笔试地点在首都轻济与贸易大学,口语考试安排在中围农业大学。建议考生在拿到准考证 后,再三确认口试、笔试地点。此果笔试当天看到考场亲角的标签上列出的口试地点、时间与准考 证上不一致,请以考试当天名准。

# (() 雅思口语考试的流程和内容

口语考试是时长为 12~15 分钟的一对一谈话, 主要内容分为 Part 1、Part 2、Part 3。

◆先会面寒暄一番(1~2分钟):

考官见到考生,问是否携带了电子产品(Do you have any electronic device/item with you?);考 官带考生进入考场房间、坐下;问考生姓名(Can you tell me your full name please?/What's your full name?)和家乡(Where are you from?/Where do you come from?);要求考生出示身份证件,核对信息(Can I see your ID/identification please?);告知考生考试过程将被录音(This test will be/is being recorded. Is that OK?)。

◆ Part 1 (4~5分钟):

这个部分的题目都是关于考生的个人生活,考官和考生进行一问一答。考生一般会被问到三个 话题左右,每个话题会延伸出三四个小问题。

Part 1 可能出现的话题有: work or studies, hometown, home, travelling, holiday, shopping, sports, reading, music, movies, television, news, magazines, weekend, friends, family, cooking, housework, teachers, daily routine, sleep, computer, Internet, apps...(还有很多可能出现的其他话题, 以当季度考试题库为准。)

◆ Part 2(3~4 分钟):

考官给考生一个话题,话题是"描述一个经历、地点、人物、物品或其他"。题目中会有四个 小点提示思路,比如 when、who、where、why、how you feel 等。例如:

Describe a teenager you know.					
You should say:					
who this teenager is					
how you know this teenager					
what he or she likes to do					
and explain how you feel about this teer	nager.				

考生有一分钟的准备时间,可以用考官提供的马克笔和白板(有些考点提供的是纸和笔)写下 关键词。一分钟后,围绕话题,开始1~2分钟的不间断回答。在作答结束后,考官会再问一道小 题,官方把它叫作 rounding off question。这个题目的问法会非常简单。以上面 Describe a teenager you know 的话题为例,考官可能会问的 rounding off questions 有: When was the last time you saw this teenager? How often do you spend time with this teenager? Do your friends also like this teenager? 针对 rounding off question,考生无须过多扩展自己的答案,只要快速直接给出一两句话的回答便可。例如:

**(Q)** When was the last time you saw this teenager?

A: Oh, it was yesterday. We met in the supermarket while we were both buying some groceries.

◆ Part 3 (4~5分钟):

考官会延续 Part 2 的话题,与考生深入讨论,通常会提出大众的、社会性的、抽象的问题。 问题数量在五个左右,但有的考官可能喜欢问很多问题。什么样的考官都有,大家要做好遇到各 种不同情况的准备。

Part 3 中可能出现的问题(同样以前文 Part 2 题目 Describe a teenager you know 为例): Do you think teenagers are happier than older people? What are the advantages of being a teenager? How do teenagers in your country entertain themselves? Why are there generation gaps between people?

# ● 口语"变题季"是什么意思?

雅思口语 Part 1 话题一般稳定在 30 个左右, Part 2 稳定在 50 个左右, Part 3 也有题库, 但是 实际考试中的很多 Part 3 题目是考官根据考生的回答当场发挥提问的。雅思考试有"变题季"一说, 是因为在每年的 1 月、5 月、9 月, 雅思口语题目中大概一半的旧题会被替换。所以 1 月、5 月、 9 月的前两场考试通常是一些新题出现的时候,考生有可能会遇到自己未曾见过的题目。在前两场 考试结束,新题基本浮出水面后,我们会说当季(1 月—4 月、5 月—8 月、9 月—12 月)题库"稳 定了"。

想要了解每一季的题库,可以下载"学为贵雅思" app,或者关注新浪微博 @ 学为贵。

### ● 如果对成绩不满意,可以申请复议吗?

可以,但要从成绩单打印日期起在4周内申请。在IELTS报名网站上申请复议一项或多项成 绩,复议费用均是1400元,复议时间通常是六周。任何一项复议成功,复议费将退回申请人账户; 复议失败,费用不退还。复议的结果有两种,分数不变或分数提高,复议并不会降低分数。大家 需要注意,申请复议的前提是你的实力够强、发挥不错,而不是看其他科目分数或各科分数差距 如何。 复议写实说:

杨帅老师有过四次复议经历,成绩均得到提高,收回了复议费!

第一次是在2016年9月,杨帅老师口语考了8.5分,写作7分。口语和写作均申请了复议, 口语提高0.5分,变成9分;写作分数没变,还是7分。钱收回!

第二次复议是在2017年6月,口语获得7.5分,写作7分。口语和写作申请了复议,口语提高0.5 分,变成8分(杨帅老师至今还对这次考试分数耿耿于怀);写作分数没变,还是7分。钱收回!

第三次复议是在2018年3月,口语获得8分,写作7.5分。口语和写作申请了复议,口语提高1分, 变成9分;写作分数不变,还是7.5分。钱收回!

第四次复议是在2018年6月,这次口语直接考了9分,没有复议。本次考试听力和阅读也是9分, 写作 6.5分。写作申请了复议,提高1分,变成 7.5分。钱收回!

以下是杨帅老师三张口语9分的成绩单。





# 第2章

# 官方评分标准真经

2006年,雅思考试官方向全球公布了口语评分细则,这些详尽的说明让一个依赖考官主观评 分的过程趋于客观,让考官最终的评分有理可依、有据可查,保证了口语分数的客观性和公平性, 也让雅思成绩更加为海外大学所信赖。

其实更重要的是,这个评分标准对所有雅思考生来说具有最高指导意义。事实上它已经指出了 真正提高英语口语能力的终南捷径,它是雅思口语考试中的最大金矿!

雅思口语考试的四大官方评分标准是: Fluency & Coherence (流利度和连贯性)、Lexical Resource (词汇资源)、Grammar Range & Accuracy (语法多样性和准确性)、Pronunciation (发音)。

即使你不考雅思,你也可以参考这四个标准,或者说朝着这四个方向,来练习提升你的英语口 语水平。有科学方向的指引,你的练习会更高效。

接下来,这本教材会深入讲解,在学为贵真经派,我们针对这四大评分标准设置的教学理念和 目标,设计的配套练习和素材内容。

大部分考生的口语考试目标为6分以上。因此,本教材重点讨论应对6分和7分标准的相关技 巧和练习。而且我们建议,平时应该严格参照7分标准来练习和要求自己,才能确保在考场上考出 不低于6分的口语成绩。古语有云:"谋其上,得其中;谋其中,得其下。"

如果你的目标是口语9分,欢迎拨打学为贵集团免费电话:4006236898。

# (○● Fluency & Coherence 流利度和连贯性

关于 Fluency & Coherence 流利度和连贯性,我们先来了解 6 分和 7 分的官方评判标准。如下:

**Band 6** Is willing to speak at length, though may lose coherence at times due to occasional repetition, self-correction or hesitation.

虽然时有重复、自我更正、犹豫导致的连贯性缺失,但具备交流意识、愿意充分扩展。

- Uses a range of connectives and discourse markers but not always appropriately. 能够使用一系列连接词和信号词,但有时使用不够准确。
- Band 7 Speaks at length without noticeable effort or loss of coherence.
   轻松自如地充分扩展答案,语言连贯。
  - May demonstrate language related hesitation at times, or some repetition and/or selfcorrection.

偶尔会出现因思考语言导致的犹豫、重复、自我更正。

Uses a range of connectives and discourse markers with some flexibility.
 灵活使用一系列连接词和信号词。

其实,口语的流利度和连贯性比起来,连贯性更基础,更容易上手提升。所以,我们先学如何 提升连贯性。

# ● 连贯性

连贯,就是通顺不卡壳,不会东一句、西一句,前言不搭后语,没有线索。

口语表达就像一条河流。从源头到大海,从开始到结束,这一路一直都在流淌。有时快、有时 慢;有时激情、有时平静。但是它不会停止,一直前行。我们说话也是如此,从开始讲话到最终结束, 中间应是自然流畅地向前推动。

为了做到说话具有连贯性,我们需要使用一些连接词、信号词和连接方法。

这些常用的连接方法也有利于我们更清晰、更有效地表达观点。

真经教学

学会拓展答案的技能,避免只用单词、短语、短句来回答考官问题。学会连接词、信号词、 各种连接手段,有意识地运用在交流表达中。



because = as = coz (口语中常见表达)

due to sth. = because of sth.

so, therefore, as a result, as a consequence, in this case, which means

# 首先

first of all = for starters = first off = firstly one reason/problem/advantage/benefit is that ...

其次

plus = also = besides = additionally = on top of that another reason/problem/advantage/benefit is that ...

#### What are the benefits of travelling?

A: Well, I think travelling has a multitude of benefits. For starters, it's a great way for people to unwind. Many people nowadays are under a great deal of pressure and they may even feel depressed because of it, so it's quite important for them to do something from time to time in order to relax. I believe travelling is one of the best things they can do. Another benefit of travelling is that it allows people to see different cultures, traditions and lifestyles. In fact, I just came back from New Zealand, and what I found there was that people in this country lived a very slow pace of life, which is really different from where I come from.

#### i Key Words

a multitude of... 很多…… unwind [An'waind] v. 放松 be under a great deal of pressure 有很大压力 depressed [dr'prest] adj. 抑郁的

from time to time 偶尔 allow sb. to do sth. 令某人能够做某事 live a slow pace of life 生活节奏很慢

### 比如和等等

for example = for instance 例如 let me think of an example 让我找个例子 such as = like 比如

let me give you an example 我给你举个例子 by way of an example 举例说明 and so on = and so forth 等等

# ●代词

人称代词: he, him, she, her, it, they, them

指示代词: this, that, these, those

注意:使用代词是一种高级的连接方式。很多中国考生代词使用较少,总是不断地重复名词, 这样听起来很不自然。

# ● 定语从句

....who is... (当主句以某个人结尾的时候)

...which is... (当主句以某个物品、地点、事件等结尾的时候)

...where...(当主句以某个地点结尾的时候,从句可翻译成"在那里")

#### Who's your favourite celebrity?

A: My favourite celebrity is Hebe, <u>who</u> is a really well-known singer in China. I adore her because... um, just because <u>she</u> is so beautiful and has a wonderful voice. So you know, I listen to her songs every day, no matter where I go.

词泪 Key Words

well-known [,wel'noun] adj. 著名的 (= famous)

adore [ə'dɔ:(r)] v. 喜欢 (= like)

#### **Q** What outdoor activities do you like?

*A:* Well, the outdoor activity that I enjoy the most is absolutely hiking, <u>which I think</u> is getting more and more popular in China now. I like to go to the northeast of my hometown <u>where</u> I usually hike for three or four hours on the weekends, either alone or with some of my close friends, <u>which is</u> extremely enjoyable.

词汇 Key Words

enjoyable [In'dʒɔIəbl] adj. 令人愉快的, 令人感到享受的

注意:使用从句不仅可以表达复杂思想, 还能够起到连接的作用。中国考生此果对此理解不够, 就无法地道地运用。

# ● 填充词

um, well, I mean, you know

填充词 (fillers) 是我们在思考的时候可以使用的词汇。思考和犹豫是无法避免的,在考试中一 定会出现。当我们思考或犹豫的时候,不能完全不出声,也不能在考场上和考官大眼瞪小眼,而是 应该说一些填充词来过渡。填充词帮助我们即使在思考时,也能保证自己的语流顺畅地进行下去, 让交流过程没有断档和冷场。

注意:you know 这个词在口语考试中完全可以使用,只要考生用正常的、思考的语气说出 you know,考官不会说 I don't know。有的同学用疑问语气说 you know 或 do you know,或者说 as you know,这些都是不对的,这时考官会说出 I don't know 就不足苟奇了。

#### Do you think you will live in your hometown forever?

*A:* No, I don't suppose I will live in my hometown for the rest of my life, because...<u>um</u>, <u>you know</u>, I really want to move to a smaller city in the south of China at some point in my life, like <u>um</u>, Dali or Xiamen, and <u>I mean</u>, this is because in those places, the pace of life is much slower than in my city...

pace of life 生活节奏

#### 词汇 Key Words

for the rest of my life 在我的余生 at some point in my life 在人生的某个时刻

●填充句

Um, I'm not sure ...

I don't really know, but...

Well, let me think about it ...

Let me see ....

Oh, that's a tough/tricky/difficult one ...

Well, I'm not an expert on this, but ... (an expert on sth. 对某个领域很了解的人)

I don't know much about this, but I guess...

I haven't thought about it before, because ...

Hang on a second ... (hang on 等一会儿)

What else can I say?

How can I put it? (put 说, 表达)

Wait, I think I was wrong ...

Oh, no, I thought I knew, but nothing comes to mind now ... (come to mind 被想到)

God, I forgot the word. Um...

我们在和考官聊天的过程中可以自然地使用以上句子,帮助自己进行思考。灵活恰当地使用这 些句子不会被扣分,反倒能帮助我们把英语说得更加流畅。

有的同学担心过多使用填充句会造成自己分数降低。不用纠结,说点什么一定比不说话分数高。 当然最理想的状态是恰当使用。

What are the differences between the buildings in the north of China and those in the south of China?

A: <u>Um, god, that's a tough one. I'm not an expert on buildings</u>, so I don't suppose I can give you an academic answer, but <u>um</u>, what I can only think of is that...<u>well</u>, since it's much colder in the winter in the north of China, the walls tend to be thicker than in the south...

词汇 Key Words

academic [,ækə'demɪk] adj. 学术的 tend to 往往会,常常会 thick [θɪk] adj. 厚的

#### What is the definition of happiness?

A: Oh, my goodness, this is a really tricky question. Um, I haven't thought about it before, but in fact, I was thinking before this test that if I could get a good score this time, I would definitely be super happy and celebrate it by inviting my friends to sing karaoke with me, haha. So, the definition of happiness? Let me think...well, I don't suppose I can give you a very good one, but I just think that happiness is the feeling you get when you have achieved something important or are doing something you enjoy.

词汇 Key Words

sing karaoke 唱卡拉 OK

#### Is there anything you don't like about your hometown?

A: Oh, yeah, it's the fact that there are so many people everywhere. You know, every morning, when I go to work, the bus is...um, what's the word? Sorry, I was going to say a very good word, haha. Oh yeah, jam-packed! Buses are usually jam-packed in my hometown, which makes my ride to school very uncomfortable.

词祖. Key Words

jam-packed [dzæm'pækt] adj. 非常拥挤的

ride [raɪd] n. (乘车或骑车的) 短途旅程

# ●提出观点

I think ..., What I think is that ...

I guess..., I suppose...

in my opinion, as far as I'm concerned, the way I see it

I believe..., I bet..., I'm convinced that...(这一组都是"我相信"的意思)

**c.g.** <u>What I think is that</u> cities will be less noisy in the future because factories are being moved out of cities and fewer and fewer drivers honk their horns on the roads.

通汇 Key Words

honk one's horn 鸣笛

e.g. I bet I'll live in my hometown for the rest of my life coz I'm so attached to it.

词泪 Key Words

be attached to sth. 喜欢……; 对……有感情

# 表示时间

five years ago, last week

when I was a child, when my parents were young

in the future, in the near future

# 重复前文

as I said, as I said before, as I mentioned earlier

在我们说话的过程中,很有可能在某一个点需要重复一下之前提到过的信息,这个时候,我们 就可以使用以上几个表达。

# **贝**对比

but, however, on the other hand, in/by contrast

**e.g.** Elderly people generally like to play tai chi, do some square dancing and just go for a walk in parks in their spare time. Young people, <u>on the other hand</u>, tend to go shopping a lot, and they also like to work out at the gym.

#### 词汇 Key Words

elderly people 老人 ( = old people) go for a walk 散步 tai chi 太极拳 work out at the gym 在健身房健身 square dancing 广场舞

e.g. Men usually talk a lot about sports, like basketball and soccer. <u>By contrast</u>, women are more fond of talking about friends, families and what kinds of clothes are in fashion.

#### 词汇 Key Words

in fashion 流行



to be more specific, to be exact

in fact = actually

e.g. The Forbidden City is hundreds of years old. <u>To be more specific</u>, it was built in the 1400s, so that was 600 years ago.

e.g. After jogging for 5 months, I successfully got slimmer. To be exact, I lost 25 pounds.

词汇 Key Words

slim [slɪm] adj. 苗条的. lose...pounds 减掉……磅肉 (在这里可以 直接使用"磅"这个计量单位,1磅=0.454 千克)

**e.g.** I'm into various types of movies, like comedies, sci-fi movies, documentaries and so on. But, um, <u>in fact</u>, what I love the most are absolutely comedies, because they always give me a good laugh.

词汇 Key Words

be into sth. 喜欢…… various ['veərɪəs] *adj*. 多种多样的 comedy ['kɒmədɪ] n. 喜剧 sci-fi movie 科幻电影 documentary [,dokju'mentrɪ] n. 纪录片 give me a good laugh 让我开怀大笑

### 通常

generally speaking, generally, typically

**e.g.** <u>Generally speaking</u>, Chinese students are quite shy when it comes to giving a speech or presentation, so they absolutely have to work more on these.

e.g. Old people generally get up pretty early every day, around 6 o'clock or even earlier than that.

**e.g.** <u>Typically</u>, children in China are asked by their parents to learn a musical instrument when they're very small.

词汇 Key Words

when it comes to... 当谈到……时;就……而论

musical instrument 乐器

# 让步

having said that, that said 话虽如此

**e.g.** It takes years of hard work to learn a language well. <u>Having said that</u>, some people are very talented and perhaps they can master a foreign language within a short period of time.

e.g. What I enjoy doing in my spare time is staying home and doing some reading, which I think is quite relaxing. <u>That said</u>, I do feel a bit lonely from time to time, and in that case, I'll call some of my friends and we'll meet up.

#### 词汇 Key Words

years of hard work 多年的刻苦学习 talented ['tæləntɪd] adj. 有天赋的 master ['mɑːstə(r)] v. 熟练掌握 within a short period of time 在很短的时间内

英文中常用的连接方法不止以上这些,大家可以在本书的雅思口语范例答案中学习到更多。

想要连贯性强,除了掌握上面讲到的连接词和特殊连接方法,还需要考生说话时逻辑顺畅,一 环扣一环。关于逻辑真经,我们主要在下面的"流利度"中进行讲解。

# ● 流利度

流利,是交流水平高的体现。包含了思维流利和表达流利,二者缺一不可。口语交流中,我们 不只追求说话连贯,更追求口语的流利。你看,我们表扬一个人时,总会说:"她讲话很流利,思 维很流畅。"而"说话很连贯"则是大多数人都具有的一种基本能力。

虽然看上去流利度的要求很高,但提高流利度,我们有真经。

● 提升语感

没有很好的语感,一个人讲话就会磕磕巴巴的,而不是自然流畅的。

短时间内提升语感的最好方法是反复朗读背诵句子。大家可以将本书中给出的每个例句都反复 朗读很多遍,直到能够熟练背诵。

这个过程会很无聊,纯体力活。就像在健身房健身举铁,练着练着,身材就变好了。坚持着坚 持着,语感就有了。

### ●省去翻译

很多同学会说自己做不到这一点,因为不想中文意思的话,他们根本不知道要如何造出正确的 句子。这是一种错误的方法,因为在脑海中不断翻译会降低我们说话的流利度。其实,我们可以通 过如下方法解决"不断想翻译"的问题:

- ◆方法 1: 在朗读和背诵英文句子的时候,不去想中文翻译,而是去感受它的意思。可以先从单词 开始,再到短语、短句,最后到长句。
- ◆方法 2: 练习"立刻张嘴说英语"。如果大家有语伴的话,这会比较方便。你们可以和语伴不断地 练习用英文对话,逼着自己不要想太久就迅速地说出句子。如果你没有语伴,只是一个 人练习英语,也可以选择"自言自语"的方法。不管想到什么或看到什么,都用英文表 达出来(可以小点声,以免别人觉得你奇怪……)。
- 方法 3: 沉浸在英语当中。大家可以每天尽量多地听英语新闻、看美剧英剧、听英语电影。让自己沉浸在一个英语的环境中可以帮助大家很快地培养英语思维习惯,跨越从中文翻译到英文的过程。省去这个时间,英语自然流利。

# ● 不要纠结语法错误

很多同学流利度不高,一个很大的原因是在说话时纠结语法,不断思考句型结构(先行词、后 置定语、半倒装……)。这样的话,流利度自然会下降。 其实,对于大部分中国考生来说,大家是可以犯一些语法错误的。

因为 6 分评分标准语法部分提到 "考生在使用复杂结构时可能出现很多错误,但这些错误很少 会妨碍考官的理解"。7 分评分标准语法部分提到 "频繁地说出没有错误的句子,但还是有一些语法 错误存在"。绝大多数中国考生的口语目标分数是 6 或 6.5,有一小部分同学需要考到 7 分甚至更高。 我们需要在平时练习口语的时候尽量减少语法错误,因为过多的错误肯定会导致失分。但是在考试 中应该以流利度为重,因为我们毕竟不需要做到语法完美。更重要的是,在口语表达中先要做到自 然流畅的沟通,然后才能去思考语法是否完全无错。

# ●不要纠结"加分词"

地道的、亮点的词汇是可以给考生加分的,这一点我们在"词汇"的章节会专门学习。但是一 些同学有"词汇至上"的想法,认为任何基本的、普通的、简单的词汇都需要进行替换,变成亮点的 加分词汇。这种想法很危险。

首先,考生无须把每个词都换成所谓的"加分词",因为只要在考试中给出一些亮点词汇,向 考官证明自己有很不错的词汇水平,就可以获得加分了。

另外,当考生想将一个普通词汇换成加分词汇时,如果对该加分词汇不够熟悉,则很有可能导 致口语流利度的下降,因为考生需要更多的思考。

所以建议大家,在不能自然快速地使用某个加分词的时候,使用普通词汇就好了。

不能为了给考官秀词汇而牺牲口语交流的流利度。

### ● 逻辑为王

考生在雅思口语考试中不是每道题只说一句话就够了,而是应该"能扩展则充分扩展"(这样考生才能在有限的11~14分钟内向考官充分证明自己的口语水平,能扩展答案而不去做就等于在浪费机会)。

在这种情况下,想要保证流利度,就需要考生在说完一句话后,立刻想到下一句话说什么,再 下一句话说什么。每两句话中间一定有很紧密的逻辑连接,这样考生可以从前一句话"推"到后一 句话,中间无须经过太多思考。减少思考时间,可以提高流利程度。

这,就需要真经派的逻辑训练。

提高雅思口语的逻辑能力并不难,我们在下面会学习到一些扩展方法,教会大家如何从前一句 话"推"到后一句话。我们先来看一段回答:

#### Can you tell me something about your hometown?

A: Yes, sure. My hometown is Beijing and it has a long history. I mean, it's over 3,000 years old and because of that, there are many places of historical importance here, like the Great Wall, the Summer Palace, the Forbidden City and so on. Out of these places, the most famous one is absolutely the Great Wall because people from all around the world know it and also if you go to the Great Wall, you will see that it's usually very crowded...

#### 词汇 Key Words

place of historical importance 古迹;具有历史 all around the world 全世界 重要性的地方 crowded ['kraʊdɪd] *adj*. 拥挤的

out of... 在……当中

我们现在来分析一下这个相对较长的答案是如何扩展下去的:

long history → 多长? 3,000 years → 表现? many places of historical importance → 哪些? the Great Wall, the Summer Palace, the Forbidden City... → 最有名? the Great Wall → 怎么证明? people from all around the world + crowded

通过这个答案,我们大致可以了解什么叫"一句推一句"了。

到底怎么"推"?剑桥雅思官方建议考生在回答问题时,通过"原因""举例""对比""个人经历" 等扩展自己的回答。我们根据官方的指导总结出了如下简单高效的逻辑扩展。

▋ 原因

只要我们自己觉得舒服,就可以在答案中的任何地方添加原因。

#### **Q** Do you often take the bus?

A: No, not really, (原因) because I find it super uncomfortable. (上一句原因) There are usually way too many people on a bus in my hometown. You know, (上一句的原因) we're in a city with a huge population and more and more people flock here every year. So, when I take the bus, I can never get a seat.

#### 词汇 Key Words

find sth. 觉得…… super ['su:pə(r)] *adv*. 十分, 非常 way too many 太多, 特别多 a huge population 庞大的人口数量 flock somewhere, flock to a place 涌到某处

#### Which part of your apartment do you like the most?

A: Well, I think it would be the balcony (原因) because it's where I usually do some reading. (上一 句的原因) I love reading a lot coz it's a great way for me to unwind and pass the time. So, yeah, this is why my favourite place in my apartment is the balcony.

#### 词汇 Key Words

balcony ['bælkənɪ] n. 阳台

do some reading 读点书

#### We have much time do you spend on outdoor activities each week?

A: Not a lot honestly. I guess I only spend one hour or so doing outdoor activities like jogging and playing badminton. (原因) This is because most of the time, I'm extremely busy. (上一句的原因) I'm in my third year of high school and I'm preparing for the College Entrance Examination, which is a big thing, so I don't really have much time to do outdoor activities.

#### 词汇 Key Words

honestly ['pnɪstlɪ] *adv.* 老实说 one hour or so 一小时左右 or so 左右 College Entrance Examination 高考 a big thing 一件很重要的事

#### Will you move to another city in the future?

A: Yes, I'm convinced that I will move to a smaller city at some point in my life. I'm not sure where to go yet, but it has to be somewhere in the south of China. Perhaps I will go to either Dali or Lijiang (上一句的原因) because people in these two places have a much slower pace of life. I don't suppose I will live in my hometown for the rest of my life (上一句的原因) because the air quality is awful here, and I'm really concerned about my health.

#### 词汇 Key Words

I'm convinced that 我确信		air quality 空气质量
at some point 在某一时刻	2 C	awful ['o:fl] adj. 糟糕的
a slow pace of life 慢节奏的生活		be concerned about sth. 关心某事

请记住:雅思口语考试的规则是,只要考官给我们机会,我们就可以在任意时间说自己想说的 内容,所以我们上面讲到的"原因"可以出现在任何地方。

虽然给出"原因"是一个很好的扩展方式,但是,它不是最好的。"原因"需要抽象思维,需要 我们去思考分析。在口语表达中,如果思考过多,势必会造成流利度下降。所以,下面要学习的是 帮助我们减少思考、同时还能充分扩展的方法:宽泛——具体。

#### 🗍 宽泛——具体

不断推出具体内容是最简单最有效的扩展方式,给出很多细节也会让你讲的话更有意思,言之 有物。

"宽泛——具体"的方法有很多,比如数字、表现、降级、列举、举例等。

如果考官问你最喜欢的歌手是谁,与其干巴巴地回答"我喜欢林俊杰",不如继续推出具体的 内容。例如, 数字: 我喜欢林俊杰很多年了——10年

表现:我喜欢林俊杰——每天都要听他的歌

降级:我喜欢林俊杰的音乐作品——尤其是情歌类型的——其中有一首是《江南》

我们来看一些例题,感受一下什么叫"宽泛——具体",里面用到了数字、表现、降级等方法。

#### Q Is there anything you don't like about your hometown?

A: I don't like the fact that it's extremely cold in the winter. I mean, sometimes, (数字) the temperature can be as low as minus 30 degrees Celsius, which is absolutely terrible. (表现) I only want to stay indoors, wrapped up in a heavy overcoat. I seldom do any sport when it's so cold like this. So yeah, I'm not a fan of the winter in my hometown.

词汇 Key Words

degree Celsius 摄氏度 stay indoors 待在室内 be wrapped up in... 裹在……里 overcoat ['əʊvəkəʊt] n. 大衣

#### How often do you do outdoor activities?

A: I do outdoor activities every single day, (具体时间) especially in the evening, (原因) because I only have free time then. (具体活动) You know, I often go to the park close to my home and run for half an hour or so and also from time to time, I dance with my grandma in that same park. I really love these outdoor activities.

词汇 Key Words

every single day 每一天 close to 接近于; 在……的近旁 (= near) from time to time 偶尔,有时

#### Who taught you to use the computer?

A: Oh, my dad taught me how to use the computer when I was in middle school. If I remember correctly, (具体时间) when I was 13 years old, my dad bought me a computer on my birthday as a gift. Then, (具体教了什么) he taught me how to boot up the computer, how to turn it off, and oh, he also showed me how to use it to draw.

#### 通紅 Key Words

if I remember correctly 如果我没记错的话 boot up the computer 开机 (=turn on the computer) turn off the computer 关机

#### **Q** Do you often listen to music?

A: Yeah, sure I do. I listen to music all the time, (降级) and my favourite type of music is country music. You know, (降级) I'm a huge fan of Taylor Swift and I listen to her songs every single day. She has released several hit albums and (降级) the one I like the most is 1989. It was a classic.

#### 词汇 Key Words

a huge fan of... 非常喜欢……的人 release [rɪ'liːs] v. 发行 hit album 非常火的专辑 a classic 一个经典

#### How often do you watch TV?

A: Well, I watch television every single day. (降级) You know, I'm quite into sports and so sports programmes are definitely my favourite. (降级) There's this programme named *Everyday Sports* on BTV-6 which I watch on a daily basis.

#### 词汇 Key Words

be quite into... 很喜欢……

on a daily basis 每天

通过以上几个题目的范例答案,我们大概了解了什么叫"宽泛——具体"。现在,我们来更加 深入地学习几种非常重要的"宽泛——具体"的方式——列举、表现、降级、举例。

◆ 列举:

有很多雅思口语 Part 1题目只用"列举"就可以直接应对。不过,如果我们想在"列举"后继续 扩展的话,可以从列举的内容中挑出一个继续讲。比如,我喜欢很多户外活动,打网球、滑雪、攀 岩等,(挑一个)我最爱的还是网球,和我最好的朋友亚瑟一起,一周打两三次。下面有几个 Part 1 范例,一起来看在回答中如何应用。

#### What do you like to do on a sunny day?

宽泛: Well, I like to do various things on a sunny day,

列举: such as jogging, picnicking with my friends and hiking in the countryside.

挑一个: But, um, I think what I enjoy the most is going on a picnic with some of my closest friends. You know, it is really enjoyable when we do it on a sunny day.

#### 词汇 Key Words

various ['veərɪəs] *adj.* 多种多样的 picnic ['pɪknɪk] v./n. 去野餐; 野餐 go on a picnic 去野餐 closest friend 最好的朋友 enjoyable [ɪn'dʒɔɪəbl] *adj.* 愉快的; 令人 享受的

#### What types of movies do you like to watch?

宽泛: Um, I dig all kinds of movies-----

- 列举: action movies, thrillers, documentaries, comedies and so on.
- 挑一个: But if I had to pick a favourite, I'd say it would be documentaries, because I'm quite into learning and I always feel great when I can learn something new by watching a good documentary film.

#### 词汇 Key Words

dig sth. 喜欢某事 (= be into sth.) action movie 动作片 thriller ['θrɪlə(r)] *n*. 恐怖片 documentary [,dokjʊ'mentrɪ] n. 纪录片 comedy ['komədɪ] n. 喜剧片 if I had to... 如果我不得不…… (虚拟语气)



宽泛: Yeah, I do. I adore some movie stars actually,

- 列举: like Jackie Chan, who I'm sure you know, um, Tom Cruise, George Clooney and so forth.
- 挑一个: Out of these, I guess my favourite is Jackie Chan, and...it's easy to explain why—he's Chinese, haha.

**远汇** Key Words

adore [ə'dɔ:] v. 喜欢	so forth 等等 ( = so on)
Jackie Chan 成龙	out of these 在这些当中

#### What colours do you like?

宽泛: Um, I think I like all bright colours,

列举: such as yellow, pink, light blue and um...yeah, these are the colours I love.

挑一个: However, I do have a favourite, and it's light blue. You know, many of my clothes are blue, like some of my shirts, my hoodies and so on.

#### 词汇 Key Words

bright colour 亮色

hoodie ['hudi] n. 帽衫

#### ◆ 表现:

这种扩展方式可以用于非常多的雅思口语 Part 1题目。使用"表现"时,我们可以尽量多地去思考"时间、地点、人物、事件、感受"。下面同样给出了几道例题,一起看看如何应用。

#### Do you like reading?

A: Yeah, absolutely, I'm a big fan of reading and...

表现: ...(时间) I read on a daily basis, (具体时间) especially early in the morning (原因) because it's really peaceful and there are no distractions. (感受) I find reading extremely enjoyable.

词汇 Key Words

peaceful ['pi:sfl] adj. 安静的

distraction [dr'strækfn] n. 干扰

Do you like walking?

A: Yes, I do.

表现: I adore going for a walk (地点) in the park and (时间) whenever I have time, I do it. (具体时间) You know, usually in the evening, I go to the park (地点) near my home and walk for half an hour or so (人物) with my parents. (感受) I think it's a really good way to relax and pass the time.

Do you often go travelling?

A: Yes, I think I do.

表现: (时间) I go travelling 2 or 3 times a year and (地点) I like to go to places with stunning views. Every time I travel, (人物) I go with my boyfriend (原因) coz he's an amazing photographer and takes awesome photos of both the scenery and me.

◆ 降级:

这种扩展方式同样可以用在非常多的雅思口语题目中。通过不断降低级别来使内容具体化。如: foreign food—Japanese food—sushi, sports—swimming—breaststroke (蛙泳), travel—places near the sea— Phuket (普吉岛)。

#### How often do you go swimming?

A: Oh, I go swimming quite often—at least once a week I suppose. I go even more frequently in the summer because it's scorching hot and swimming helps me cool off.

降级: My favourite style of swimming must be the butterfly stroke because most people can't do it, and whenever I swim like that in the pool, I get the attention of everybody, which makes me super proud.

in Key Words

scorching hot 非常热的 cool off 凉快一下, 解暑

butterfly stroke 蝶泳

#### Are you close with your family members?

A: Yeah, I am. I come from a tight-knit family and my parents and I are very close.

表现: We hang out every day and often chat with each other.

降级: We mainly like to talk about travel as we're all into going to interesting and beautiful places, (再降级) especially seaside cities. So when we hang out together, we always chat about those places we've been to and where we would like to visit in the future.

#### 词汇 Key Words

tight-knit [tart'nrt] adj. 关系紧密的

◆ 举例:

在抽象的、大众化的、观点类题目中,我们应尽量多举例子,证明前面提到的观点,这样才能 更简单有效充分地扩展答案。我们在练习这种类型的题目时,可以先看看问题中有哪个词是"宽泛", 先从那个宽泛的词去思考一下自己的答案中可能会出现什么样的例子。

"举例"就是一种"降级",无须过多纠结二者的区别。

注意:很多同学都认为在雅思口语考试中必须要给出很多原因,这是错误的。我们在青文中 提到过,不断解释、恳说原因会导致考生思考过多而流利度下降。有的考官比较喜欢问"Why?", 这也不是大的问题。事实上,即使考官问"Why?",考生也可以通过举例去回答、去扩展,比此说 "Because...um...for example..."。

X

**(Q)** How to become a well-known person in China?

A: Well, there are all kinds of ways to become a celebrity in my country and one that comes to mind is taking part in some talent shows.

宽泛: a well-known person

举例: 李宇春

- 具体: There are myriad talent shows in China, like the *Voice*, *China's Got Talent* and so on. Those who dream of becoming singers and actors and other kinds of performers attend these competitions in order to rise to fame.
- 举例: Let me give you an example. 李宇春 is a singer and she is a household name in China. She shot to stardom by taking part in a talent show called *Super Girls* over 10 years ago. She won and became known to everybody in my country.

#### 词汇 Key Words

celebrity [sɪ'lebrɪtɪ] n. 名人 come to mind 被想到 take part in 参加 talent show 选秀节目 myriad ['mɪrɪəd] adj. 很多的 rise to fame 快速成名 (= shoot to stardom) a household name 一个家喻户晓的名字

#### **Q** Do you think men and women should share housework?

A: Yes, absolutely. Men and women should definitely share housework.

- 宽泛: men and women
- 举例: my wife and I
- 宽泛: housework
- 列举: sweep the floor, mop the floor, do the washing up, take out the trash
- 解释: I mean, why not? This is a pretty natural thing to do, I believe.
- 举例: Like in my family, my wife always does the cooking, does the washing up and makes the bed and I'm responsible for sweeping and mopping the floor, taking out the trash and so on. I suppose probably since we share everything, we have a really good relationship.

#### 词汇 Key Words

do the washing up 刷盘洗碗 (= do the dishes) make the bed 整理床铺 be responsible for 负责…… sweep the floor 扫地 mop the floor 擦地 take out the trash 倒垃圾 since [sɪns] *conj*. 由于

**(2)** Do you think taking photos is a good way to record our lives?

Ŕ.

A: Yeah, I do. I actually think taking photos is one of the best ways to have a record of where we have been and what we have done.

宽泛: photos

举例: travelling

举例: birthday party

why?(考官问原因)

- 举例: Because um...for instance, people love travelling, and when they go somewhere and see some stunning views, they just snap some photos and in the future, when they see these photos, it helps them reminisce about that particular place they went to.
- 个人例子: In fact, I just flipped through a photo album yesterday and I recalled my time in London for a while.
- 举例: Um, let me think of another example. If someone is throwing a birthday party at home and his or her friends and relatives come over, I bet the birthday person wants to have photos taken of when he or she cuts the cake and everybody sings the birthday song.

So yeah, I believe everyone agrees that taking photos helps us record our lives.

#### 词汇 Key Words

have a record of... 有一个……的记录 stunning views 非常漂亮的风景 snap some photos 拍照 ( = take some photos) reminisce about 回忆 flip through 随便翻看 photo album 相册 throw a party 举办一个派对

#### Q In China, have television programmes changed much in recent years?

- 宽泛: television programmes
- 举例: reality shows

更具体举例: Running Man

- 回答: Oh, yeah, television has indeed changed quite a lot in recent years.
- 举例: One big change is that we have myriad reality shows now and they're extremely well-liked, whereas in the past, we didn't have them.
- 更具体举例: For example, the most popular reality show in my country is *Running Man* where several wellknown actors and actresses just play games and chase each other. Sorry, my description might sound a little boring, but this show is the No.1 reality show in China and the majority of young people love it, including me. However, 20 or 30 years ago, we didn't have this type of show. We only had news programmes and some TV series.

#### 词汇 Key Words

indeed [ɪn'di:d] adv. 确实well-known [,wel'nəun] adj. 著名的; 众所well-liked [wel'larkt] adj. 深受喜爱的; 流行周知的 (= famous)的 (= popular)chase [tfers] v. 追逐whereas [weər'æz] conj. 然而 (表示对比, 放description [dr'skrɪpʃn] n. 描述在句中)the majority of 大多数的

真正答题时,以上提到的所有小方法小技巧都是可以灵活混合使用的,具体见如下例题: Have you travelled by boat?

A: Um, let me think. Yeah, I have. (时间) It was a long time ago when I was still (宽泛) a primary school student. If I remember correctly, (降级 / 具体时间) I was a third grader and (人物) my folks and I went on a cruise trip (地点) from Tianjin to Shanghai. It lasted 3 or 4 days and (感受) I remember having a blast during the journey. My mom didn't quite like it though because she was seasick.

#### **Q** Do you like to spend time with teenagers?

A: Yeah, I think so. (降级) I particularly enjoy hanging out with my cousin, who is 16 years old, because we two have a lot in common—(列举) we're both basketball fans, we like playing video games and we also dig singing karaoke. (桃一个) Sometimes on the weekend, we go to a karaoke bar together and sing for a couple of hours, which is a lot of fun.

在上面两道题中,混合使用了"表现"和"降级"。细心的读者会发现,这两个方法并不是严格 按顺序依次使用的,在"表现"中的"时间"小点里插入了"降级",将"很久之前"进一步降级到"三 年级"。大家完全可以混合、交叉使用上述扩展方法。

# 贝对比

在扩展答案的过程中,我们也可以主动使用"对比",使自己的回答扩展得更加充分,通过展示一些"比较"的语言,证明自己的语法水平。

常用句型:

compared to ...

unlike ....

by comparison, ...

in comparison, ...

by contrast, ...

in contrast, ...

A is much more ... than B

A is a lot more ... than B

A is not as...as B

#### What do you like about your neighbourhood?

A: Well, off the top of my head, it should be the fact that there's a subway station only 300 metres away, which makes it super convenient for me to go anywhere by subway.

对比: One of my friends lives in the southwestern suburb of the city where there's no subway station at all. He always complains about the lack of public transportation in his neck of the woods. I think I'm much luckier.

#### id Key Words

off the top of my head 我立刻想到的是 the lack of public transportation 没有公共交通 in his neck of the woods 在他所在的区域

#### What was your favourite subject in high school?

A: Well, it must have been Chinese. I guess it's because of my Chinese teacher, who was quite

hilarious and knowledgeable and ... most importantly, she was very good-looking, hahah.

对比: By comparison, my math teacher was...what's the word? Um, his lessons were rather mind-numbing. He never told any jokes in class and so I don't think his class was as interesting as Chinese.

词汇 Key Words

hilarious [hɪ'leərɪəs] adj. 有趣的 knowledgeable ['nɒlɪdʒəbl] adj. 知识丰富的 mind-numbing ['maindnʌmiŋ] adj. 无聊的



#### How many hours do you sleep?

*A:* Oh, this is a sad question, because I'm only able to get 6 hours' sleep every day, which is far from enough I think. I've been very busy since the beginning of this semester and so I'm constantly sleep-deprived.

对比: I used to sleep much more in middle school. At that time, I went to bed every day around 10 o'clock at night and got up at 7 a.m., which was really awesome! Compared to that time, my life is miserable now.

#### 词汇 Key Words

far from enough 远远不够 constantly ['konstəntlɪ] *adv.* 不断地;一直地 sleep-deprived [sli:pdr'praɪvd] *adj.* 缺乏睡眠的 awesome ['ɔ:səm] adj. 非常棒的 miserable ['mɪzrəbl] adj. 悲惨的

#### Do you like watching advertisements?

A: No, I'm not a fan of them, at all. Most adverts are pretty annoying, especially when they appear all of a sudden while I'm watching a show that I really like.

对比: But, in fact, when I was a kid, I used to be crazy about watching some commercials, coz I found many of them pretty interesting.

#### 词汇 Key Words

annoying [ə'nɔɪɪŋ] adj. 令人很烦的 all of a sudden 突然 commercial [kə'm3:fl] n. 电视广告



A: No, I don't have a pet. I love small and adorable animals, but my apartment is rather cramped, and there's not enough room for me to keep a kitten or puppy.

对比: When I was a teenager, however, I had a dog. It was really cute, and I would feed it, play with it and walk it in the park every day. Sadly, it was run over by a car when I was 17.

词汇 Key Words

adorable [ə'do:rəbl] adj. 可爱的 (= cute) cramped [kræmpt] adj. 窄小的 kitten ['kɪtn] n. 小猫

puppy ['pʌpɪ] n. 小狗 feed [fi:d] v. 喂

# 虚拟语气

使用 "虚拟语气" 同样是一种实用的扩展方法,还可以向考官证明自己强大的语法水平。很多 同学觉得"虚拟语气"是一个非常复杂的语法现象,不易学习、容易犯错。其实不然,只要大家掌握 了基本的虚拟语气句型,就可以很好地应用它了。偶尔犯一些小错误,也没有太大关系,毕竟只有 少数同学的目标分数是8分以上。

在雅思口语考试中,我们一般会对"现在"进行虚拟。基本句型如下:

If ... were/was/could/did ..., ... would/could ...

I wish I were/was/could/did...Then, I would/could...

It would be fantastic if I were/was/could/did...

#### **Q** Would you want to be a teacher?

A: No, I don't think so, because I'm a rather short-tempered person.

虚拟: If I were a teacher and had to deal with kids every day, I guess I would lose my temper all the time. That wouldn't be good for the kids or for me.

词汇 Key Words

short-tempered [fo:t'tempəd] adj. 脾气不好的, 易怒的

deal with kids 和孩子们打交道 lose one's temper 发脾气

#### **Q** Do you often wear jewelry?

A: No, I don't. One major reason is that the pieces of jewelry that I really like are too pricey, and I can't afford them. What I can afford are low in quality and I don't want to wear them.

虚拟: If I were wealthier, I would buy many high-quality necklaces and bracelets and earrings. I would wear them every day. I believe others would envy me a lot. That would make me feel great!

#### 词汇 Key Words

pricey ['praisi] adj. 昂贵的 (= expensive) can't afford 买不起 low in quality 质量很低的 high-quality [har'kwplətɪ] adj. 质量高的

necklace ['nekləs] n. 项链 bracelet ['breislət] n. 手镯; 手链 earring ['Iərɪŋ] n. 耳环 envy ['envi] v. 羡慕

#### What's your favourite form of transport?

A: Well, my favourite should be driving, but I don't drive very often, because I don't have a car now. I'm not a local and so I'm not allowed to buy a car. This is why I take the bus every day, which is super uncomfortable.

对比: I wish I could buy a car here. Then, I would drive it every day. It would be fantastic if I could sit in my car, listen to music and smoke a cigarette without having to fight for space on a crowded bus.

Key Words

a local 当地人

be allowed to do sth. 被允许做某事



#### Is there anything you don't like about your hometown?

A: Oh, off the top of my head, it must be the fact that it's a sleepy place. By that I mean, there's not much fun going on here. We don't have many malls, cinemas, karaoke bars...

对比: You know, I wish my hometown were more vibrant and dynamic. I wish there were more malls here so that I could go shopping every weekend with my friends. We would have more things to do and enjoy our lives more.

#### 词汇 Key Words

sleepy ['sli:pr] adj. 寂静的; 死气沉沉的 go on 发生

vibrant and dynamic 充满生气的, 活跃的



#### Q How often do you spend time with your family?

A: Oh, we don't spend time very often, because we live extremely far away from each other. We only see each other once or twice a year.

对比: It would be fantastic if my parents agreed to move to where I'm living. Then, we would hang out every day, chat with each other, play mahjong together. I could go shopping with my mom and she could help me pick out shoes. The problem is, they don't want to move.

# Image: Contract C

即使你是金山词霸,也不一定能在雅思口语考试中拿到高分。口语是语言的输出,是语言 的运用。

所以,口语词汇讲究的不是词汇量有多大,而是运用词汇的能力有多强,看谁对词汇用得好、 用得妙、用得地道。我们重点讨论口语 6 分和 7 分所对应的词汇要求。
雅思口语真经总纲

# Band 6Has a wide enough vocabulary to discuss topics at length and make meaning clear in spite of inappropriateness.

有充足的词汇量来详细谈论不同话题;虽然有词汇使用不当的情况出现,但是可以 保证表达清晰。

Generally paraphrases successfully.

当表达较为复杂的概念的时候,通常可以使用较为简单的语言转述成功。

Band 7 • Uses vocabulary resource flexibly to discuss a variety of topics.

能够灵活使用词汇资源来谈论多种不同话题。

• Uses some less common and idiomatic vocabulary and shows some awareness of style and collocation, with some inappropriate choices.

能够使用一些非常见词汇及习语表达,并可以很好地使用词组搭配,有时会出现表 达不恰当的情况。

• Uses paraphrase effectively.

当表达较为复杂的概念的时候,可以很好地使用较为简单的语言转述。

### 真经教学

 考生需要具备一定的词汇量,能够谈论不同话题。尤其要专注雅思口语中的高频话题和 当季热门考试话题的相关核心词汇。

2. 当考生发现自己无法表达某些复杂概念的时候,不应过于纠结,而是应当使用自己已有的词汇将该概念进行转述,把自己想表达的事情说清楚即可。过于纠结某个自己不熟悉的词汇,会影响流利度。

3.想考到雅思口语高分的同学,应该在备考期间积累一些"非常见词汇"、"词组搭配"和"习 语表达";目标分数只是6分的同学,也可以尽可能积累这三类词汇,以保证自己的词汇分数。 但是,当考生试图使用某个自己不熟悉的词汇,导致流利度下降的时候,应放弃使用该词汇,来 保证流利度。

对于"非常见词汇"、"词组搭配"和"习语表达"的积累,我们不应过于追求数量,因为背诵过 多的东西,可能导致的结果是无法熟练使用这些表达。所以,我们给大家总结了"三十组同义形容 词"、"三十个动词词组"和"三十五个习语"。大家把这些表达熟练背诵,反复朗读例句,并多思考 如何将它们使用到雅思口语话题中。

# ● 三十组同义形容词

雅思口语 7 分以上评分标准词汇部分提到考生应能使用非常见词汇 (less common vocabulary), 这有利于提高考生的词汇分数。什么是 "非常见词汇" 呢?其实它们就是对我们非常了解的简单词汇 的替换。如,beautiful 是常见词汇,它可以被替换为非常见词汇 gorgeous、picturesque 等。大家不 要把 "非常见词汇" 想得太难,认为它们就是我们看都看不懂、根本不认识的词汇。事实上,"非常 见词汇" 也可以很简单。 我建议:在雅思口语考试中,如果可以,尽量用不同的词汇表达相同的意思,这能够体现出大家的词汇多样性,避免用词重复,进而提高口语分数。但是,请注意,当你使用替换词时,如果思考这个词用的时间太久,会影响你的流利度,请一定使用简单词。

下面,请大家学习三十组英语中最常见的形容词的替换词:

### 1)难

常见词汇: hard, difficult

非常见词汇: tough, tricky

e.g. Oh, um, this is indeed a very **tough** question and I've never thought about it before. (tough 难 办的; 难解决的)(当碰到一个很难的题目,需要思考一会儿的时候,可以用这句话来拖延时间。)

e.g. Parking can be extremely **tricky** in my hometown as there are so many cars and so few parking spots. (tricky 难办的; 棘手的)

词汇 Key Words

parking ['pɑ:kɪŋ] n. 停车

parking spot 停车位

2 简单

常见词汇: easy

非常见词汇: effortless

e.g. I'm not sure about other people, but to me, learning how to ride a bike was effortless. (effortless 容易的; 不费力的)

### 3 富有

常见词汇: rich, wealthy

非常见词汇: affluent, well-to-do

e.g. Chinese people are becoming more and more affluent, so an increasing number of people go travelling overseas now. (affluent 富裕的, 富有的)

**通汇** Key Words

an increasing number of 越来越多的

travel overseas 出国旅游

e.g. I wasn't born into a well-to-do family, so my childhood was kind of hard. (well-to-do 富裕的, 有钱的)

词汇 Key Words

be born into... 出生在……(的家庭)

kind of 有点

4 好

常见词汇: good

非常见词汇: awesome, superb, impressive

e.g. I watched the movie Doctor Who last weekend and it was awesome. (awesome 很好的)

**c.g.** George Clooney's movies are **superb**. I can't believe how talented he is. (superb 极佳的; 卓越的)

词汇 Key Words

talented ['tæləntɪd] adj. 有才华的

e.g. The rice terraces in Yunnan are quite impressive. (impressive 给人以深刻印象的;了不起的)

词汇 Key Words

rice terrace 梯田

为 难以置信

常见词汇: unbelievable

非常见词汇: incredible

e.g. He's done skydiving a couple of times, which I think is truly **incredible**. (incredible 难以置信的;了不起的)

词汇 Key Words

skydiving ['skaɪdaɪvɪŋ] n. 高空跳伞

**坏、不好、糟糕** 

常见词汇: bad

非常见词汇: awful, dreadful

e.g. The air quality in Beijing is awful. (awful 让人讨厌的; 糟糕的)

e.g. The traffic is **dreadful** in my hometown. People are always stuck in the middle of a traffic jam for a long time. (dreadful 糟糕透顶的)

词汇 Key Words

be stuck in the middle of a traffic jam 被堵在路上

### 7 好吃

常见词汇: delicious, tasty

非常见词汇: scrumptious, palatable

e.g. The sushi I had last week was scrumptious. (scrumptious 美味的, 可口的)

e.g. My favourite food is spaghetti. I think it's so palatable. (palatable 美味的, 可口的)

词汇 Key Words

spaghetti [spə'gett] n. 意大利式细面条

》漂亮、好看

常见词汇: beautiful

非常见词汇: gorgeous, pretty, picturesque

e.g. I bought a really gorgeous dress yesterday and I love it a lot. [gorgeous 漂亮的 (人或物)]

e.g. My niece is a **pretty** little girl and everyone likes her. [pretty 漂亮的,好看的(通常指人,尤 其是女孩)]

e.g. Tibet is such a **picturesque** place and many people in China long to go there. (picturesque 风景 如画的)

词汇 Key Words

long to do sth. 渴望做某事

饿

常见词汇: hungry

非常见词汇: starving, famished

e.g. We had been waiting for our food for half an hour and it still hadn't been served. We were starving. (starving 饿极了的)

e.g. I suffered from insomnia and I didn't fall asleep until 3:00 in the morning. Then, I felt famished, so I just got up and went to a KFC. (famished 饿极了的)

Key Words

suffer from insomnia 失眠

fall asleep 入睡

### 10 渴

常见词汇: thirsty

非常见词汇: parched

e.g. I was so parched yesterday that I bought a Coke and drank it all in one minute(parched 干渴的)

词汇 Key Words

a Coke 一瓶可乐

11 高兴

常见词汇: happy

非常见词汇: overjoyed, ecstatic

e.g. I was overjoyed when the girl I had a crush on said she loved me. (overjoyed 欣喜若狂的,万 分高兴的)

词汇 Key Words

have a crush on sb. 暗中喜欢某人

e.g. I felt ecstatic when I found out that my boyfriend had booked two plane tickets for us to go to Sanya. (ecstatic 狂喜的, 欣喜若狂的)

### 12) 沮丧

常见词汇: upset

非常见词汇: deflated, despondent

8

e.g. I felt rather **deflated** when my mom said we wouldn't go anywhere during the holiday. (deflated 沮丧的; 灰心的)

e.g. I found out that the girl I loved already had a boyfriend. I was **despondent** for a whole week. (despondent 沮丧的; 失望的)

3 时间长

常见词汇: long

非常见词汇: lengthy

e.g. It was such a **lengthy** meeting that I almost fell asleep in the middle of it. (lengthy 漫长的; 冗长的)

14 困

常见词汇: sleepy

非常见词汇: groggy, bleary-eyed

e.g. I felt groggy the whole morning. It was awful. [groggy (因疲劳) 昏昏沉沉的;因倦的]

e.g. I was so bleary-eyed yesterday afternoon, so I bought a cup of coffee from the cafe downstairs. [bleary-eyed(因困倦)视线模糊的]

15 生气

常见词汇: angry

非常见词汇: mad, peeved

e.g. My neighbours kept making noise the entire day and that made me really mad. (mad 愤怒的, 非常生气的)

词汇 Key Words

the entire day 一整天 (= the whole day)

e.g. We waited for our food for an hour and I was peeved about it. (peeved 恼怒的, 气恼的)

16 安静

常见词汇: quiet

非常见词汇: peaceful, tranquil, serene

e.g. Where I live is a **peaceful** part of town and this is the reason I chose this particular place. (peaceful 宁静的, 平静的)

e.g. The park near my home is tranquil and beautiful. (tranquil 宁静的, 安静的)

e.g. I was on holiday in Fiji for a week. I really loved the serene atmosphere there. (serene 宁静的,平静的)

词汇 Key Words

on holiday 度假

17 冷

常见词汇: cold

非常见词汇: freezing (cold), bitterly cold

e.g. It was freezing cold in Harbin and so I put on six layers of clothes. [freezing (cold) 极冷的]

词汇 Key Words

layer ['leɪə(r)] n. 层

e.g. It's bitterly cold in my hometown in the winter and the temperature can be as low as minus 20 degrees. (bitterly cold 极冷的)

id Key Words

minus ['maɪnəs] adj. 零下的

热

常见词汇: hot

非常见词汇: scorching (hot)

e.g. I don't like the fact that it's scorching hot in the summer. I only want to be at home with the air conditioner on. [scorching (hot) 极热的]

词汇 Key Words

air conditioner 空调

19 重要

常见词汇: important

非常见词汇: vital, crucial

e.g. Museums are absolutely vital in cities. (vital 必要的; 至关重要的)

e.g. It's crucial that we take some time off once in a while to recharge our batteries. (crucial 至关重 要的)

词泪 Key Words

take some time off 休息一段时间

recharge one's batteries 放松;补充精力



20 有意思、有吸引力

常见词汇: interesting

非常见词汇: fascinating, captivating, gripping

e.g. My favourite teacher was Mr. Zhao, our history teacher. Whatever he said was extremely fascinating. (fascinating 迷人的, 极有吸引力的)

e.g. My all-time favourite TV show is the Ellen Show, which is a captivating talk show. (captivating 迷人的,极有吸引力的)

all-time favourite 一直以来最喜欢的

e.g. That book is so gripping that I just can't put it down. (gripping 迷人的, 极有吸引力的)

词汇 Key Words

can't put it down (好看到) 停不下来

**9** 大

常见词汇: big

非常见词汇: gigantic, huge, spacious

e.g. The building we visited was gigantic. (gigantic 巨大的, 庞大的)

e.g. My hometown has a huge population. If I'm not mistaken, there are about 10 million people here. (huge 巨大的, 极大的)

e.g. The apartment I live in now is quite **spacious**. I mean, it's about 150 square metres in size. (spacious 广阔的, 宽敞的)

四小

常见词汇: small

非常见词汇: tiny, cramped

e.g. I remember the gift I loved the most at that birthday party was a **tiny** bike which was given to me by my aunt. (tiny 非常小的)

e.g. My bedroom is pretty cramped, so I'm thinking of moving to a bigger place.(cramped 狭小的)

### 33 有名

常见词汇: famous, well-known

非常见词汇: renowned, celebrated

e.g. Jolin is a singer from Taiwan who is **renowned** for her great voice. (renowned 有名的; 有声 望的)

e.g. I idolise Jacky Chan, a **celebrated** actor and martial artist. I really admire his tenacity and persistence. (celebrated 有名的; 受人敬仰的)

idolise ['aɪdəlaɪz] v. 把……当作偶像崇拜

tenacity [tɪ'næsɪtɪ] n. 坚毅

persistence [pə'sɪstəns] n. 毅力; 锲而不舍

martial artist 武术家

24 流行

常见词汇: popular

非常见词汇: well-liked

e.g. Singing karaoke is a well-liked leisure activity in my country. (well-liked 流行的; 深受喜欢的)

词汇 Key Words

sing karaoke 唱卡拉 OK

5 知识丰富

常见词汇: knowledgeable

非常见词汇: well-read

e.g. My dad is a well-read person. Every time I ask him a question, he knows the answer. [well-read 博览群书的; 博学的(这里的 read 是过去分词, 读音和 red 相同)]

26 无聊

常见词汇: boring

非常见词汇: dull, mind-numbing

e.g. I found math rather dull. No matter how hard I tried, I couldn't get into it. (dull 无聊的, 枯燥 无味的)

e.g. My history teacher was extremely **mind-numbing**. She was my least favourite teacher in high school. (mind-numbing 超级无聊的)

方 苗条

常见词汇: thin

非常见词汇: slender, statuesque

e.g. Alice is this slender girl who is so well-liked in my class. (slender 苗条的)

e.g. I wonder how she can still be **statuesque** after giving birth to a baby. [statuesque (女性) 高 挑挺拔的]

give birth to 生育, 生(孩子)

28 胖

常见词汇: fat

非常见词汇: chubby, pudgy

**e.g.** Junk food is extremely popular among kids and we can always see a lot of **chubby** children. (chubby 肥胖的;圆滚滚的)

e.g. My friends always teased me by saying I was **pudgy**, so I decided to lose weight. (pudgy 微 胖的)

词汇 Key Words

tease sb. 取笑某人

lose weight 减肥

29 老

常见词汇: old

非常见词汇: old-fashioned, run-down

e.g. While on holiday in Lijiang, we stayed in an **old-fashioned** inn, which I found to be quite interesting. (old-fashioned 老式的; 不时髦的)

### 词汇 Key Words

inn [In] n. 小客栈

find sth. (to be) 觉得……(怎么样)

e.g. I used to live in a **run-down** area when I was growing up. [run-down (建筑物、地区) 破旧 不堪的; 失修的]

#### 30 流行

常见词汇: fashionable

非常见词汇: chic, trendy

e.g. My favourite piece of clothing is a nightgown which is chic and beautiful. [chic 时髦的(注意 这个词的读音 [fi:k])]

### 词汇 Key Words

a piece of clothing 一件衣服

nightgown ['nartgaun] n. (女士) 睡衣, 睡袍

e.g. There's a trendy-looking cafe quite close to my home and I like to frequent there(trendy 时髦的, 时尚的)

词汇 Key Words

frequent [frɪ'kwənt] v. 常去, 常出入于……

# 三十个动词词组

动词词组 (phrasal verbs) 是英语的重要组成部分,很多英语母语者会通过一个英语学习者对动 词词组的掌握程度来判断此人的英语水平。

一个动词词组通常由一个动词和一个副词或介词(后接宾语)组成,如: grow apart、pass away、come across sb./sth. 等。如果介词后面需要添加的宾语是代词,则通常将这个代词放到动 词和介词中间,如: give it up、call it off。但这条规则对于某些动词词组不适用,如: come across him、take after her 等。大家在学习中应该反复朗读背诵例句,提升语感,当说到某个地方时,才能 自然正确地使用某一个动词词组。

下面我们学习三十个在雅思口语考试中很常用的动词词组。

D back sb. up 支持某人

e.g. No matter what I do, my wife backs me up.

B break up 分手

e.g. I've been pretty despondent lately because my boyfriend and I broke up two weeks ago.

词汇 Key Words

despondent [dɪ'spondənt] adj. 沮丧的



B call sth. off 取消某事

e.g. I was extremely shocked when Judy told me that she called off the wedding.

4 not care for sth. 不喜欢某事

e.g. I don't care for cooking coz I find it really time-consuming.

5 cheer (sb.) up (使某人) 高兴起来

e.g. I tried to cheer her up after her divorce.



6 come across 偶然遇到 / 碰到

e.g. It was surprising that I came across my primary school classmate in a city so far away from home.

7 run into sb. 偶然遇到某人

e.g. I ran into my ex-girlfriend yesterday. What a small world!

cut down on sth. 减少……

c.g. I've been putting on weight recently, so I really have to cut down on my calorie intake.

词汇 Key Words

put on weight 增重, 增肥

calorie intake 卡路里摄入量

not cut out to do sth. 不是……的材料,不具备……的素质和才能

e.g. I don't think I'm cut out to be a teacher.

10 get along (with sb.) (和某人)相处得很好

e.g. We've been getting along ever since he moved in.

**①** get together 聚会,小聚

e.g. I'm going to get together with my high school classmates next week.

12 go out with sb. (与某人)谈恋爱

e.g. My girlfriend and I have been going out for three years and I think it's time to tie the knot.

词间. Key Words

tie the knot 结婚



B give in (to sth.) 屈服,让步

e.g. Whenever my boss decides on something, there's no way we can change his mind, so we always have to give in whether we like it or not.

词汇 Key Words

there's no way... ·····是不可能的

change one's mind 改变某人的主意

### 🖸 give (sth.) up 放弃(某事)

e.g. My dad always tells me that if I have my heart set on something, then no matter what happens, I should never give up.

词汇 Key Words

have one's heart set on 渴望 / 一心想要……



#### **15** grow apart 逐渐疏远

e.g. Since I don't see my relatives often, we've gradually grown apart over the years.

词汇 Key Words

gradually ['grædʒʊəlɪ] adv. 逐渐地

over the years 这些年来

(1) hang out 待着;玩(大部分中国考生都认为这个表达是"闲逛"的意思,其实不然。它的英文解释叫作 to spend a lot of time in a place,也就是说,在家里也可以 hang out,而无须 go out)

e.g. My favourite room in my apartment is the living room where I often hang out with my parents.

17 let sb. down 令某人失望

**e.g.** I promised my parents that I wouldn't **let them down**, so in the end, they said that they would support my decision to go and study in the UK.

18 look up to sb. 尊重 / 敬仰某人

e.g. My granddad is someone that I really look up to. He's taught me a lot over the years.

19 look forward to sth. 期待

e.g. I plan to go to Fiji on holiday next month and I'm pretty looking forward to it.

词汇 Key Words

go somewhere on holiday 去某地度假

Fiji 斐济(太平洋岛国)

20 pass away 去世

e.g. This ring is extremely important to my family because it belonged to my grandmother. She passed away when I was ten.

20 run out of sth. 用完;耗尽

e.g. We realised that we were running out of time, so I said that we had to put a rush on it.

词汇 Key Words

put a rush on sth. 赶快、抓紧做某事



e.g. I would like to set up my own business after I graduate from college.

23 shop around (for sth.) 货比三家 (之后买……)

e.g. What I love doing the most in my spare time is shopping around for some beautiful dresses.

23) show off 炫耀

**e.g.** I wouldn't be friends with those who love **showing off** their possessions—watches, necklaces, cars, etc.

25 sleep in 睡懒觉

e.g. I usually sleep in on the weekend, but last Saturday, I got out of bed really early and went to the Military Museum.

get out of bed 起床 (= get up)

b take after sb. (长相、性格等) 像某人

e.g. I take after my dad. We're both very optimistic people.

词汇 Key Words

optimistic [, pptr'mɪstɪk] adj. 乐观的

27 think sth. over 认真思考,仔细考虑

e.g. In fact, I just got a job offer from an electronics company last week, but I'm not sure if I'll take it. I have to **think it over**.

词汇 Key Words

job offer 工作机会,工作邀请

electronics company 电子产品公司

238 try sth. out 尝试

e.g. While we were there, we tried out a lot of the local food.

39 work out 健身, 锻炼身体

e.g. I work out at the gym three days a week and I'm much fitter than before.

词汇 Key Words

fit [ftt] adj. 健康的

20 wrap up (warm) 多穿衣服,穿得暖和

e.g. It's freezing cold in the winter, so every time I go out, my mom tells me to wrap up warm.

# 🖣 三十五个习语

在英语中,有一种词汇表达叫作习语。乍一看,很难理解这些表达的意思。如 a walk in the park,在公园里走路? 是什么意思?其实这是"简单"的意思。我们可以讲: Cooking is a walk in the park to me. 再如 in the pink,在粉色中?这个表达的意思是"身体健康"。其实,我们中文也有类似表达: "你看你这小脸儿,红扑扑、粉嫩嫩的。"

习语就好像我们中文的成语一样,在一个人说话自然流畅的前提下,偶尔使用一两个习语,会 给人一种用词非常地道、语言水平很高的感觉。在下文中,我们将学习一些在雅思口语考试中非常 实用的习语。

🚺 recharge one's batteries 放松;补充精力

e.g. It's extremely important to recharge our batteries by travelling once in a while.

词汇 Key Words

once in a while 偶尔, 有时

a walk in the park 非常简单的事 (= a cakewalk)

e.g. I thought drawing was a walk in the park when I was a kid, but now I just feel that I can't draw at all.

🗿 no picnic 很难

e.g. Painting is no picnic to me. I can never do it well.

④ once in a blue moon 很少见,千载难逢

e.g. I take the bus once in a blue moon coz buses are never on time.

on cloud nine 超级开心的 (=as happy as a clam)

**e.g.** When my dad told me that he would take me to Disneyland, I was **on cloud nine/as happy as** a **clam**.

6 have a blast 玩得开心 (=have a ball=have a whale of a time)

e.g. I threw a party at home last Sunday and had a blast/had a ball/had a whale of a time.

💋 bread and butter 主要收入来源

e.g. I major in interior design now, so I guess designing houses will be my bread and butter in the future.

词汇 Key Words

interior design 室内设计

🕙 like a cattle car 非常拥挤(像牲畜车一样)

e.g. The subway in Beijing is just like a cattle car, but I still have to take it every day.

get out of the rat race 逃离大城市的疯狂竞争

e.g. It's really stressful living in a large city, so I want to move to a smaller city to get out of the rat race.

词汇 Key Words

stressful ['stresfi] adj. 给人很大压力的



e.g. I often shoot the breeze with my parents during and after dinner.

**加** hit the sack 上床睡觉

e.g. I like to do some reading before hitting the sack, which helps me fall asleep faster.

IP on the same wavelength 志趣相投; 观点一致

**e.g.** My parents and I are **on the same wavelength**, so we find it quite enjoyable talking with each other about different things.

13 see eye to eye 观点一致

e.g. He and I see eye to eye on almost everything.

🚺 I'm my mother/father all over again 我很像我的妈妈 / 爸爸

e.g. My relatives always say that I'm my mother all over again. We're both outgoing and optimistic.

15 a chip off the old block 很像妈妈 / 爸爸

e.g. I think I'm a chip off the old block. My dad and I are equally shy.

16 run in the family 为一家人所共有

e.g. My dad is a hard-working man. I think it **runs in the family** coz 4 also consider diligence to be a very important quality.

17 have a lot on one's plate 有很多事情要做

e.g. I've been having a lot on my plate recently, so I haven't had much time to do a lot of reading.

18 work like a beaver 工作很忙

as busy as a beaver 非常忙

e.g. I've been working like a beaver lately and I really need a vacation.

19 pull out all the stops 竭尽全力

**e.g.** My mom's birthday is approaching and I will **pull out all the stops** to throw her a wonderful birthday party.

词汇 Key Words

be approaching 临近; 接近

throw (sb.) a party (给某人)举办派对

20) as healthy as a horse 非常健康

e.g. I do outdoor activities on a regular basis. This is why I'm as healthy as a horse.

2 in the pink 健康红润,精神很好

e.g. I have to work out more often in order for me to always be in the pink.

A have two left feet 手脚不灵活

e.g. I have two left feet, so I don't do any sport well.

### 33 under the weather 身体有点不舒服

**e.g.** I'm feeling a little **under the weather** today, so I'm sorry if I don't seem to be very enthusiastic about our conversation.

### A have a sweet tooth 喜欢吃甜食

e.g. I have a sweet tooth, so I always eat some chocolate.

25 around the corner 即将到来

e.g. Will's concert is around the corner and I'm super stoked about it.

词汇 Key Words

be stoked about sth. 为某事感到兴奋

26 all the rage 非常流行

e.g. Giving chocolate as a gift is all the rage in China.

27 be up to speed on sth. 了解关于某事的最新消息

e.g. I like to read news online and it allows me to be up to speed on what's going on in the world.

词汇 Key Words

what's going on 发生了什么

28 a household name 一个家喻户晓的名字

e.g. My favourite singer is Eason, a household name in China.

29 have a musical ear 擅长音乐

e.g. I don't really have a musical ear, so whenever I sing, people tell me to stop.

🚳 have a tin ear 不擅长音乐

e.g. I have a tin ear, so I seldom sing.

31 drive sb. up the wall 令某人不爽,令某人心烦

e.g. My neighbours threw a party at night and it was so loud. It drove me up the wall.

32 push one's buttons 惹恼或激怒某人

e.g. No matter what I said, my girlfriend wouldn't respond to me and that just pushed my buttons.

333 a pain in the neck 令人很烦的人 / 东西 / 事

e.g. There's a construction site near my home and that's a real pain in the neck.

3 take one's breath away 令人惊叹

e.g. The beauty of that place took my breath away and I took hundreds of photos there.

35 pick one's brains 向某人请教 / 讨教

e.g. I enjoy hanging out with my grandpa because I can always pick his brains on some issues.

# (() Grammar Range & Accuracy 语法多样性和准确性

口语就是口头造句。而造句,就要遵守构建句子的规则法则,这就是语法。

雅思考试和国内的英语考试不同,没有专门的语法题,而是把语法考查融入写作和口语之中。

在学为贵真经派,语法的学习其实分成两个层次:一是语法知识的掌握,二是语法的恰当、灵 活、地道的运用。

先看雅思官方关于语法 6 分和 7 分的评分标准:

Band 6 • Uses a mix of simple and complex structures, but with limited flexibility.

能够混合使用简单和复杂的结构,但缺乏灵活性。

• May make frequent mistakes with complex structures, though these rarely cause comprehension problems.

在使用复杂结构的时候可能会频繁出错,但这些错误不会影响理解。

Band 7 • Uses a range of complex structures with some flexibility.

能够有一定灵活度地使用一系列不同的复杂结构。

• Frequently produces error-free sentences, though some grammatical mistakes persist. 虽然还是会有一些语法错误,但是大部分语句无误。

#### 真经教学

雅思口语语法这项评分要想达到 6,考生必须要在交流中说出复杂结构、复杂句。这表明考 生能够表达复杂的思想。

要快速她提升语法这一项的分数,其实不是要考生花很多时间采统复习语法知识,而是要熟 练她掌握和使用一些多样的、高频的、经典的句型。不同的句型,其实就代表了不同的、复杂的 语法结构。

让你背三十个句型,和让你学一本三十个章节的语法书相比,哪个更简单呢?

你背了三十个句型之后,我们能担保你的口语表达有了多样性的基础,而且句型有准确性。 但你把语法书学完后,我们不能保证你自己会用,且造句准确。

所以,请掌握口语真经两大秘籍:"八大经典语法错误"和"三十二个语法功能句型",它们可以很好地帮助大家快速高效地达到雅思口语语法7分要求。

### ● 八大经典语法错误

以下语法错误,大家千万纠正、一定别犯。

这都是中国考生在雅思口语考试中翻来覆去折磨考官的。

过去三十多年,在中国的雅思口语考官一代一代经验传承。对于以下这些错误,你要知道,考 官们极为敏感。

### ● 单复数问题

可数名词不能单独出现,不能说 Museum is good 这样的句子。可以说:

A museum is a place where people can gain a great deal of knowledge.

(a/an+单数可数名词; Museum is a place... 就不对了。)

Teachers are those people who play a pivotal role in the development of children.

(复数可数名词; Teacher is... 就不对了。)

The computer has changed my life in various ways.

(the+单数可数名词; Computer has... 就不对了。)

词汇 Key Words

gain a great deal of knowledge 学到很多知识 play a pivotal/crucial/vital role in... 在……中 扮演重要角色 in various ways 在很多方面

说一类东西的时候一般使用可数名词复数,一些情况下也可以在前面加上 the 或 a/an。 My hometown is famous for the tourist attractions and shopping malls.

(不能说 famous for tourist attraction and shopping mall。)

The Internet is part and parcel of my life because I do practically everything on it.

(一般不说 Internet is...)

Writing a letter is pretty time-consuming, whereas writing an email is quite fast.

(不能说 writing letter 或 writing email, 可以说 writing a letter/an email 或 writing letters/emails。)

词汇 Key Words

be famous for 因……而有名 tourist attraction 景点 shopping mall 商场 part and parcel of my life 我生活中非常重要的 一部分 practically ['præktɪklɪ] *adv.* 基本上 (=almost) time-consuming ['taɪmkənˌsju:mɪŋ] *adj.* 耗 费很长时间的

很多同学经常说 "Mirrors is ... " "The people in my hometown is ... "。应该改成:

Mirrors are definitely very important in our lives. I mean, that's something so obvious that no one would question it.

The people in my hometown are quite welcoming and hospitable and you will absolutely feel welcome there.

obvious ['**bbvɪəs**] *adj.* 明显的 question ['**kwest**[ən] v. 怀疑; 质疑 welcoming and hospitable 热情好客的 feel welcome 感到受欢迎的

# ♥ 第三人称单数问题

很多同学总是想不起来在一般现在时中使用第三人称单数。大家在练习的时候要不断提醒自己 不要犯这个经典错误。

Joey and I often hang out together. He has a great sense of humour and he always tells many jokes.

My girlfriend <u>has</u> this weird hobby of writing letters to everybody in this Internet age. She often <u>spends</u> two or three hours a day writing a letter and then <u>goes</u> to the post office to mail it.

Julie likes to wear jewelry. She <u>calls</u> me from time to time and <u>asks</u> me to go shopping for earrings and bracelets and pendants with her.

词汇 Key Words

sense of humour 幽默感 weird [wɪəd] adj. 奇怪的 Internet age 网络时代 pendant ['pendənt] n. 项链上的坠饰

### U there be 问题

很多同学喜欢说 "There have/has...",我也是醉了…… there have 是什么用法!

there be 变化形式: there are、there is、there were、there was、there used to be、there will be 等。 There are many parks in Beijing and this is something I really like about this city.

There is a library close to my apartment, so I often go there and read a book on the weekend.

I'm quite convinced that there will be a robot in every household helping people do all the housework.

If I remember correctly, there were about 40 of us on the bus.

<u>There used to be</u> a swimming pool within walking distance of my home, so I could go swimming quite often. Sadly, it's not there anymore.

### 词汇 Key Words

I'm quite convinced that 我相信(=I believe that) household ['haushəuld] n. 家庭 if I remember correctly 如果我没记错的话 within walking distance of... 在……的步行 距离内

sadly ['sædlɪ] adj. 遗憾的是; 令人伤心的是

"There are more and more people travel abroad..." "There are many people walk to work..." 这样的 句子都是错误的,最简单的改法是:

More and more people travel abroad now.

Many people walk to work every day either because where they live is close to their workplace or they see it as a form of physical activity.

也可以改成:

There are more and more people who travel abroad now.

<u>There are many people who</u> walk to work every day either because where they live is close to their workplace or they see it as a form of physical activity.

### 词汇 Key Words

travel abroad 出国旅行 (= travel overseas)	workplace ['w3:kpleɪs] n. 工作地点
eitheror要么要么; 或者或	a form of physical activity 一种运动形式
者	

• 情态动词 (can、could、should、will、would、must...) 问题

很多同学喜欢说 "I will very happy." "She would quite excited." 这样的句子, happy 和 excited 都 是形容词, 前面需要有系动词(be、feel 等)。正确的句子是:

I will be extremely happy if my mom tells me we're going to Hawaii on vacation.

Ann told me that she really loved Eason's songs, so I decided to take her to Eason's concert. I believed that she would be super excited.

很多同学喜欢说 "You should to..." "I think we must to...",同学们,情态动词后面别加 to!!!

Many children and teenagers are really sedentary and they seldom work out. I think there should be more PE lessons at school and parents should encourage them to do sports more.

In order to lead a healthy life, we must try to strike a balance between work and leisure.

词汇 Key Words

sedentary ['sedntrɪ] *adj.* 久坐的 seldom work out 很少健身 lead a healthy life 过一种健康的生活 strike a balance between A and B 在 A 和 B 之间达成平衡

# ●时态问题

过去时: 表示过去发生的动作或存在的状态, 一般带有 when I was a child、three years ago、 yesterday、last week 这种确定的时间状语(有时候如果对于时间很确定, 也可以不带时间状语)。 My parents always <u>made</u> me do housework. I <u>had</u> to make the bed, take out the trash and I also <u>did</u> the laundry sometimes. I <u>was</u> a poor kid growing up.

Last Sunday morning, I <u>needed</u> to get to the mall at 9, but I got up late and then got stuck in traffic. When I <u>arrived</u>, it <u>was</u> already 9:40.

My parents and I went on a boat trip to Dalian. The whole trip lasted three days and we had the time of our lives.

### 词汇 Key Words

make sb. do sth. 强迫某人做某事 make the bed 整理床铺 take out the trash 倒垃圾 do the laundry 洗衣服 ...growing up 在小的时候 get/be stuck in traffic 堵在路上 go on a boat trip 坐船出行 last [lɑːst] ν. 持续 have the time of one's life 非常开心

当一个过去时的句子有从句时,很多同学可能能够记得使用一个过去时,但容易忘记另外一个。 Peter <u>said</u> that his teacher <u>was</u> quite hilarious and knowledgeable. I <u>told</u> him that I <u>didn't</u> like my teacher because she <u>was</u> extremely boring.

We <u>talked</u> a lot about where we <u>would</u> go on holiday in the summer vacation. We <u>decided</u> that Okinawa <u>would</u> be the best place.

My dad told me that if I wanted to learn to use the computer, the first thing I needed to learn was typing.

### 词汇 Key Words

hilarious [hr'leərrəs] adj. 幽默的;风趣的(=	go on holiday 去度假
funny)	Okinawa ['pkɪ'nɑːwɑː] n. (日本) 冲绳
knowledgeable ['nplɪdʒəbl] adj. 知识丰富的	type [taɪp] v. 打字

现在完成时:表示事情发生在过去,但与现在有关系,很多时候表示事情已经完成。

注意:另外,当我们说的中文句子中出现"过""了"(过了!多么吉祥的词,现在完成时能学 不会吗?)的字眼的时候,我们基碑可以确定这个句子是完成时,具体是现在完成时还是过去完成 时还要看情况而定。

Both my dad and I are shutterbugs. <u>Over the past few years, we've been to</u> tons of places in China and taken hundreds of thousands of photos of different views and landscapes.

I think social media is a good place to enlarge my circle of friends and <u>I have made</u> quite a few friends on Weibo, the Chinese equivalent of Twitter.

My neighbours are quite nice and we get on perfectly. We've never had any run-ins in the last three years since I moved into the building.

雅思口语真经点纲

### 词汇 Key Words

 shutterbug ['ʃʌtəbʌg] n. 非常喜欢摄影的人
 equivalent [r'kwrvələnt] n. 等价物;同等

 tons of 许多;无数的;一大堆(=many)
 的东西

 social media 社交媒体
 get on perfectly 关系很好

 enlarge my circle of friends 扩大我的朋友圈
 run-in ['rʌnɪn] n. 争执; 口角

 quite a few 不少;很多
 四季

现在完成时还可以表示从过去开始,持续到现在的动作,和现在完成进行时很像(现在完成进行时表示这件事情从过去开始发生,到现在还没有结束,一直在进行)。在雅思口语考试 Part 1 关于家或家乡的题目中经常会使用这种语法形式。

I've lived in Tianjin for 20 years and I suppose I will keep living here for the rest of my life.

I've been living in this apartment for 5 years and I've become quite attached to it.

## ● 动名词问题

当一个动词要作主语的时候,要将其改成动名词,即动词的-ing形式。

Being punctual is a way of showing respect to the people we're meeting.

Eating fruit and vegetables helps us lose weight coz they're low in calories and don't contain much fat.

Hanging out with teenagers is good fun. They're so energetic and are always able to come up with , creative ideas to have a good time.

### 词汇 Key Words

punctual ['pʌŋktʃʊəl] adj. 准时的	fat [fæt] n. 脂肪
lose weight 减肥	be good fun 很有趣
be low/high in sth. 含量低 / 高	energetic [,enə'dʒetɪk] adj. 有活力的
calorie ['kælərɪ] n. 卡路里(热量单位)	come up with 想出

在 be 动词后面,一般不能直接出现另外一个动词,可以出现动名词形式。

A good way to show respect to the people we're meeting is being punctual.

In order to stay healthy, one thing that is suggested is eating plenty of fruit and vegetables.

### in Key Words

in order to 为了 stay healthy 保持健康 plenty of 大量的

动词作宾语的时候变成动名词。

I <u>practice speaking</u> French on a daily basis because I'm <u>considering going</u> to study in Paris. My cousin is a gym rat. He's crazy about working out at the gym and he wants to have a six-pack.

I'm sick and tired of always being stuck in traffic for a long time every day. It drives me crazy.

### 词汇 Key Words

consider [kən'sɪdə(r)] v. 考虑

gym rat 很喜欢健身的人

a six-pack 六块腹肌

be sick and tired of 厌倦 drive sb. crazy 使某人发疯

很多学生总是在该用动词的地方使用动名词,如 I often shopping online 或 I listening to music every day,正确的是:

I often shop online.

I listen to music every day.

go shopping、go jogging、go hiking、go travelling、go swimming、go picnicking、go skiing 这些 就当成固定搭配好了。这里所有的动词 -ing 形式去掉 ing 才是动词。

I ski in the winter.

The park close to my home is a good place to jog.

### ,动词-ed和-ing形式的问题

例: tired v. tiring

动词的 -ed 形式一般表示 "感到……",用于修饰人;动词的 -ing 形式一般表示 "令人……",用 于修饰事物。(有例外情况,要按句子意思进行区分。)

Driving is very tiring/exhausting, so I prefer to take the bus.

I usually feel extremely tired/exhausted after driving for a couple of hours.

I felt super excited when my dad told me that we were going to France on holiday.

My dad said that he got some really <u>exciting</u> news. He told me that we were going to France on holiday.

I was really <u>surprised</u> when I met Alex in Tibet. I had never imagined that we would run into each other so far away from home.

I was really <u>surprised</u> when I met Alex in Tibet. What was even more <u>surprising</u> was that we were actually staying in the same hotel.

#### 更多例子:

interested (对……感兴趣的) v. interesting (有意思的) fascinated (对……着迷的) v. fascinating (很有吸引力的) bored (感到无聊的) v. boring (令人无聊的) relaxed (感觉放松的) v. relaxing (令人放松的) touched (受到感动的) v. touching (令人感动的) ……

有些表示 "令人……" 的词语并不一定是动词的 -ing 形式。 be attracted to sth. 被……所吸引的 attractive 7 be addicted to sth. 对……上瘾; 痴迷于…… addictive 7 scared 感到害怕的 scary 令人

attractive 有吸引力的;令人被吸引的 addictive 令人痴迷的;上瘾的 scary 令人害怕的;恐怖的

# ● 介词问题

### 请熟记下面所有的正确用法:

on Monday, on Sunday, on my 9th birthday [和"在某一天"有关的大部分都用 on, 但是"在白天" 是 during the day 或 during (the) daytime、in (the) daytime]

in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening

on Monday morning, on Saturday afternoon

at three o'clock, at five p.m.

at night

at that time (在那个时候), in that time (在那个时代/时间段)

last year, last week, next month (不加介词)

I often go there and hang out with friends. It's beautiful there. (不要说 in there)

go home (不要说 go to home)

at the party

at my birthday party

on my birthday

on the road

on my way to work

on my way to and from work

I go/went there by train/plane/car. (不要说 I often by train)

on the weekend/at the weekend/on weekends/at weekends(四种说法都对,挑一种自己说得顺嘴的用)

# ● 三十二个语法功能句型

雅思口语语法 6 分以上评分标准中,所谓的"复杂结构"并不复杂。比如,大家总说的"I think..."就是一个宾语从句;"If you..."是一个条件状语从句;"When I was a child..."是时间状语从句。

有很多同学认为以上三个从句过于简单,不会让考官认为考生具备很高的语法水平。事实上, 口语中的语法本身就不是特别复杂,英语母语者根本不会在说话的时候说出很多既长又难的句子。

那么,我们如何在雅思口语备考期间提升自己对"复杂结构"的使用水平呢? 真经派的教学理 念是——靠句型。

考生不要过多地分析语法规则、句子成分,而要将某一条语法规则当成句型来学习,反复朗读 用该句型造出的句子,以此提高语感,这样便可以在口语表达中自然流畅地应用该语法规则了。

### I find sth. 我觉得……

I find the work I do quite stressful.

I found the new Fast and Furious movie extremely fascinating.

词汇 Key Words

stressful ['stresfl] adj. 令人紧张的;给人很大 压力的 fascinating ['fæsɪneɪtɪŋ] adj. 极富吸引力的

what I think is that ... 我认为 ······,我的想法是 ······

What I think is that newspapers will most likely be gone in the future.

<u>What I think is that</u> being likeable is the most important quality in a teacher. Students won't learn if they don't like their teacher.

词汇 Key Words

most likely 很有可能	likeable ['laɪkəbl] adj. 讨人喜欢的
be gone 消失	quality ['kwɒlətɪ] n. 品质

what I like (the most) about sth. is that ... 关于某事/物,我(最) 喜欢的是……

What I like the most about my major is that not a lot of people study it, which means I will have less competition when I try to find a job.

What I like the most about music is that it can always cheer me up after I've been sad or depressed.

词汇 Key Words

competition [,kompə'tɪʃn] n. 竞争 cheer me up 令我高兴起来,令我心情变好 depressed [dr'prest] adj. 沮丧的; 抑郁的

### what's great about sth. is that ... 某事/物的一个好处是 ······

What's great about my hometown is that there are many shopping malls here, which is fantastic for me, coz I'm a shopaholic.

*What's great about playing computer games is that* not only can it help me relax, I can learn some English at the same time.

词汇 Key Words

shopaholic [ʃɒpə'hɒlɪk] n. 购物狂



### which I think is...

I snack on some chocolate from time to time, *which I think is* great. It puts me in a better mood. I often do some reading for an hour or so in my downtime, *which I think is* pretty relaxing.

词汇 Key Words

snack on 吃…… (零食) an hour or so 一小时左右 downtime ['dauntaɪm] n. 不工作的时间

### 6 It is/was...that/who... 强调句式

It was my uncle who bought me my first ever watch.

It's my English teacher who's had the greatest influence on my life.

It was last week that I realised that I needed to buy a car of my own.

🕜 it's important/necessary/difficult/convenient...for sb. to... 对某人来说, ……是重要/必需/ 困难/方便的

It's important for overweight people to cut back on junk food and begin to eat healthy diets.

I believe it's necessary for us to go out and soak up the sunshine.

My school was about 10 kilometres from my home and *it was only convenient for* me *to* go in my dad's car.

I have unusually small feet, so *it's difficult for* me to buy shoes that fit me.

### 词汇 Key Words

overweight [,euve'wert] adj. 肥胖的; 超重的 cut back on 减少 healthy diet 健康的饮食 soak up the sunshine 吸收阳光

It's important/essential/necessary/crucial/vital that... ……是很重要/必要/必需/关键/至关重要的 It's extremely important that we try to be polite all the time.

The second se

It's necessary that we're updated on what's happening around the world.

It's vital that children have hobbies that they can resort to when they're tired or stressed.

be updated on... 了解……的最新消息 resort to 诉诸 be stressed (out) 感到有压力的

every time I... 每当我 ······

*Every time I* give my girlfriend a bunch of roses, she seems extremely happy, so this is why I always do it.

Every time I take the bus, I find that there are way too many people on it, which is really uncomfortable.

词汇 Key Words

a bunch of roses 一束玫瑰

) whenever... 无论何时

no matter when... 无论何时

Whenever I hang out with my parents, I just feel that time passes pretty quickly.

Whenever I watch TV and I see there are many commercials, I get annoyed.

<u>Whenever</u> you go to a movie theatre, you'll see that it's usually overcrowded because seeing movies is one of our favourite pastimes in China.

<u>Whenever</u> you go to the beach, you'll find that it's overrun with tourists. I'm actually one of those people who often hit the beach.

<u>No matter when</u> you go to a park, you can see a lot of people, especially elderly people, dancing in big groups there.

### in Key Words

commercial [kə'm3:ʃl] n. 电视广告 annoyed [ə'nɔɪd] adj. 感到很烦的; 恼怒的 movie theatre 电影院 (= cinema) overcrowded [,əʊvə'kraudɪd] adj. 非常拥挤的 pastime ['pɑ:staɪm] n. 消遣, 休闲活动 be overrun with tourists 充满游客 hit the beach 去海边 elderly people 老年人 (= old people)

# wherever you/I go... 无论你 / 我去哪里……

no matter where you/I go... 无论你 / 我去哪里……

<u>Wherever you go</u>, there are so many cars on the streets and people are always caught up in traffic.
<u>Wherever I go</u>, I wear a hat. It's been my habit for years and I don't think I'll ever change it.
<u>Wherever you go</u>, you see ads—in subway stations, in shopping malls, and even in bathrooms.
<u>No matter where I go</u>, I take a book with me. I like to read on the subway or on the bus.

be caught up in traffic 被堵在路上 it's been = it has been

for years 已经很多年了 ad [æd] n. 广告 (=advert=advertisement)

national identity 民族认同感



### 12 play a crucial/vital role in... 在……中扮演重要角色

The internet plays such a vital role in our lives today that we just can't live without it. Photography plays a crucial role in my life. I've loved it since I was ten.

### 13 I can't emphasise enough the importance of... 我认为……非常重要

I can't emphasise enough the importance of this festival. It's a big part of our national identity. I can't emphasise enough the importance of family to me.

in Key Words

a big part of.....中很重要的一部分

### as long as... 只要……

I believe as long as we work hard, we can learn a foreign language well.

As long as the weather's good and I don't have anything more important to do, I go cycling, either alone or with my friends.

词汇 Key Words

go cycling 去骑单车



### 15 unless... 除非……

Normally, I don't eat any chocolate-unless I feel extremely despondent. Chocolate makes me happier.

I never wear anything pink or red unless my girlfriend makes me.

词汇 Key Words

despondent [dr'spondent] adj. 苦恼的; 沮丧的 make [meik] v. 强迫

### 16 provided that... 如果,在……条件下

Parents should take their kids to parks as often as possible provided that there's one close to their home.

**Provided that** I'm free on the weekend, I go back to my parents' place. That's my safe haven.

词汇 Key Words

as often as possible 尽可能经常

safe haven 避风港



### so that.../in order to... 为了;以便

I dragged myself out of bed extremely early so that I could catch the early train.

My sister and her fiancé prepared a small cake for every guest <u>so that</u> everyone had something to eat before the wedding ceremony.

I would like to take a Spanish course in order to prepare myself for opening a diner in Spain.

I used to sing a lot in front of my classmates *in order to* impress the girl I had a crush on. It didn't work.

### 词汇 Key Words

drag myself out of bed 挣扎着起床 fiancé [fr'onser] n. 未婚夫 fiancée [fr'onser] n. 未婚妻 prepare sth. for sb. 为某人准备某物 diner ['daɪnə(r)] n. 小餐馆 impress sb. 给……留下深刻印象 have a crush on sb. 暗中喜欢某人 it didn't work 这没有成功

### 8 allow/enable sb. to... 使某人能够……

The advance in wireless technologies *allows people to* be in touch with friends and family virtually 24 hours a day.

Being bilingual enables me to communicate with a wider world.

Having a park built in the neighbourhood would <u>enable us to</u> have a place to relax, socialise and take exercise.

### 词汇 Key Words

the advance in.....方面的进步 wireless ['waɪələs] *adj.* 无线的 in touch with... 和……保持联系 virtually ['v3:tfuəlɪ] *adv.* 几乎, 差不多 bilingual [,bar'lɪŋgwəl] *adj.* 会说两种语言的 socialise ['səʊʃəlaɪz] v. 社交; 与人交往

#### ) get/gain a better understanding of ... 更好地了解……

That trip was educational because it helped me *get a better understanding of* a completely different culture and lifestyle within our country.

This is a fascinating programme and it allows me to *gain a better understanding of* how scientists work.

#### 词汇 Key Words

educational [,edʒʊ'keɪʃənl] adj. 有教育意 义的 fascinating ['fæsɪneɪtɪŋ] *adj*. 有极大吸引 力的

### 20 I wish...were/had/could... 我希望……(注意虚拟语气)

*I wish I had* different neighbours. The people living next door always make a lot of noise, which is a pain in the neck.

I wish I were a better painter. I've never been able to draw or paint well.

词汇 Key Words

live next door 住在隔壁

1) It would be great if ... were/had/could ... 如果……,那就太好了(注意虚拟语气)

It would be great if my apartment were bigger. The one I'm currently living in is way too cramped. It would be great if I were richer. That way, I would be able to buy better cameras.

词汇 Key Words

currently ['kʌrəntlɪ] adv. 目前,当下 way too... 特别,非常 that way 那样的话

It's hard to imagine a world in which... 很难想象一个……的世界

It's hard to imagine a world in which everyone just studies and works on their own.

It's hard to imagine a world in which people work all the time and never take any time off.

in Key Words

take time off 停下来;休息一段时间

) There's no doubt that... 毋庸置疑 / 毫无疑问的是……

There's no doubt that more and more Chinese people want to travel overseas.

There's no doubt that being bilingual and even multilingual can make us more competitive when we enter the job market.

io . Key Words

multilingual [ˌmʌltɪˈlɪŋgwəl] adj. 多语的; 会说 多种语言的 competitive [kəm'petətɪv] adj. 有竞争力的 enter the job market 进入工作市场

have/has...over the last...years/decades 在过去的……(十)年间

I've bought three cameras and taken roughly 100, 000 photos over the last three years.

I've been to 7 countries over the last 5 years.

The kind of gifts we buy for our family and friends <u>has</u> changed a lot <u>over the last two decades</u>. The way Chinese people relax <u>has</u> changed dramatically <u>over the last 30 years</u>.

词汇 Key Words

roughly ['rʌflɪ] adj. 粗略的,大概的

change dramatically 发生很大的改变

be becoming increasingly/more and more... 变得越来越……

My hometown is becoming increasingly congested.

Julie *is becoming more and more* stylish now because she's going out with a fashion designer. I tend to believe that our society *is becoming increasingly* selfish.

词汇 Key Words

congested [kən'dʒestɪd] adj. 拥堵的 stylish ['staɪlɪʃ] adj. 时尚的; 有格调的 go out with... 和……在一起; 和……约会 fashion designer 时装设计师 selfish ['selfɪʃ] *adj*. 自私的

6 It's not uncommon for sb. to... ……很常见/并不少见

It's not uncommon for Chinese people to buy luxury cars now.

It's not uncommon for young people to go to the movie theater every weekend to relax and have fun.

### raise people's awareness of... 提升人们对于……的意识

We should try to <u>raise people's awareness of</u> the increasing loneliness that old people are suffering today.

There should be more public service adverts to raise people's awareness of childhood obesity.

词汇 Key Words

increasing [In'kri:SIŋ] *adj.* 不断增长的,日益 增加的 public service advert/advertisement 公益广告 childhood obesity 少儿肥胖

### It's high time that we did sth. 是我们做某事的时候了

It's high time that we took action to save endangered animals.

*It's high time that we realised* the importance of fighting climate change, otherwise, our world would be at risk.

词汇 Key Words

take action 采取行动 endangered [In'deIndʒəd] adj. 濒临灭绝的 climate change 气候变化 at risk 有危险, 受到威胁

### in spite of the fact that/despite the fact that... 尽管 / 虽然 ······

In spite of the fact that a big proportion of our goals are usually not achieved, we should still set clear aims for the future.

<u>In spite of the fact that</u> some content on the Internet does harm to children, we shouldn't ignore its benefits, which far outweigh its downsides.

Despite the fact that our flight was an hour late, we still got there on time.

### 词汇 Key Words

a big proportion of 很大比例的 set aims 设定目标 do harm to... 对……有害 ignore [ɪɡ'nɔ:(r)] v. 忽视 far outweigh 大大超过 downside ['daunsaid] n. 负面;缺点 on time 准时

### ) What left a deep impression on me was that ... ……给我留下了深刻印象

What left a deep impression on me was that most people there could speak more than one language. What left a deep impression on me was that although the city is densely populated, we didn't see many traffic jams.

词汇 Key Words

densely populated 人口密度很大的



### There will probably/definitely be... 很有可能 / 一定会有……

With robots taking more and more of our jobs, I think <u>there will probably be</u> more emphasis on art subjects on the school carriculum in the future.

<u>There will definitely be</u> fewer and fewer people who regard newspapers as their main source of information.

### 词汇 Key Words

emphasis on... 对……的强调 art subjects 艺术学科 curriculum [kə'rɪkjələm] *n*. (学校里的) 全部课 程 regard sth. as... 把……看作…… main source of information 主要信息来源

No one can deny the fact that ... 没人可以否认 ……

No one can deny the fact that parks are extremely important for a city.

<u>No one can deny the fact that</u> the main reason why people eat out more, and more is that they're becoming increasingly busy.

eat out 出去吃饭

# (II ▶ Pronunciation 发音

我们都知道,陌生人见面,第一印象很重要。在雅思口语考场上,考官对你口语水平的第一 印象,其实就是你的发音。如果在刚开始短短半分钟的礼貌寒暄问候中,你展现出标准地道的英 音或美音,考官心中会想:"这是英语爱好者啊,很地道啊,有语言天赋,估计7分以上。"反之, 两句英语对话之后,考官心中想:"哎哟,你这个英语我听不懂啊!"你最后的口语分数一定会"扎 心了,老铁!"。

最后说一句:发音好会激发你一生学习英语的兴趣,就像音色好的人爱唱卡拉 OK 一样。认真 练好英语发音,你会受益终生。

x

请学习关于发音的评分标准:

Band 6	• Uses a range of pronunciation features with mixed control.
	能够运用一系列发音现象,掌控程度不一。
	• Shows some effective use of features but this is not sustained.
	对发音现象有效运用,但无法一直维持这种水平。
	• Can generally be understood throughout, though mispronunciation of individual words or
	sounds reduces clarity at times.
	整体可以被听懂, 偶尔会出现单个词或音发错的情况。
Band 8	• Uses a wide range of pronunciation features.
	能够充分大量地运用发音现象。
	• Sustains flexible use of features, with only occasional lapses.
	持续不断并灵活运用发音现象,偶尔会有疏忽。
	• Is easy to understand throughout; L1 accent has minimal effect on intelligibility.
	容易被听懂; 第一语言的口音对考生英语发音有很小的影响。

注意:我们并没有写出了今的发音评分标准,是因为7分的要求是"能够做到所有6分要求和一些8分要求"。

#### 真经教学

单个音、单个词要发音准确;针对自己母语和方言的固有发音特点,有针对性地纠正;了解 并练习英文中重要的发音现象:重读、弱读、略读、连读等,有意识地运用到口语中,不断提升 地道性;反复模仿标准地道发音,固化下来,积累起来。 雅思口语真经点纲

我们将在后文将发音讲解分成如下几类:

1. 单个音

2. 中国不同地区考生易错音

3. 连读(普通连读)

4. 失去爆破(特殊连读)

5. 语调高低变化

# ● 单个音

关于单个音,我们主要强调几个中国考生最容易出错的发音:/i:/、/ɪ/、/æ/、/e/、/aɪ/、/aʊ/、/p/、/ɔ:/、/n/、/l/、/θ/、/ð/。

🛡 /i:/ v. /ɪ/

/i:/ 这个音很简单,和我们中文中"一"的发音基本相同。发这个音的时候嘴唇是紧张的、用 力的。

练习

beat, eat, stream, heat, jeep, real, she, keys, deed, feet, feel, mean, heal, neat

想发出 /ɪ/ 这个音,大家微微张开嘴,嘴型不要做出任何的变化,完全放松、不要用力,去说 "一",你就会发出 /ɪ/ 这个音(请听录音)。

练习

it, bit, kiss, chick, did, fill, fit, hit, hill, bill, kit, tip, kick

à.

### 对比 练习

sheep v. ship

feel v. fill

seat v. sit

beach v. bitch

sheet v. shit

feet v. fit

sleep v. slip

/æ/ v. /e/ v. /aɪ/

这三个音是令很多中国考生痛苦的音,因为在普通话中没有 /æ/ 和 /e/ 这两个音。大部分中国 学生可以发出 /aɪ/ 这个音,因为它和 "我爱你" 的 "爱" 的发音是基本相同的。

练习

like, my, slight, fly, flight, pie, kite, slice, China, why, migrate, bite, cry, sign, mile, hide, white

### 那 /æ/ 和 /e/ 怎么发音呢?

我们先来看 /e/。想发好这个音,其实不难。大家把嘴微微张开(注意是"微微"张开,一点就可以了),然后嘴型不要做出任何的变化,去说"爱",就是 /e/ 这个音了(请听录音)。

### 练习

bet, dead, kettle, met, desk, felt, slept, gesture, medicine, pet, petty, internet, get, digest

想发出 /æ/ 这个音,我们可以使用一个非常有意思的技巧 —— 先发 /e/,再发 /ɑ:/,把两个 音连到一起(请听录音)。

这是一种比较夸张的美音的读法,英音没有这么夸张。大家可以通过这个方法先读对这个音, 然后再稍微放松一些,就能达到英音的效果。

### 练习

back, black, pat, cat, fat, gas, catch, lack, pal, sand, shallow, that, had, value, hat

### 对比 练习

dad v. dead v. died

cat v. kettle v. kite

lash v. less v. lice

math v. meth v. mice

flat v. flesh v. flight

### 🛡 /ɒ/ v. /aʊ/ v. /ɔ:/

很多同学经常把 /ɒ/ 和 /au/ 两个音弄混,因为我们在中文中,不会区别对待这两个音。在英 文中, /au/ 叫作双元音,即在发音过程中,嘴型有变化。/au/ 可以有两种读法,现在最流行的一 种读音是从 /æ/ 过渡到 /u/。大家也可以从 /ɑ:/ 过渡到 /u/ (请听录音)。

### 练习

now, about, slouch, allow, south, crowded, cow, down, found, town, pout, wow, towel, power /p/ 是单元音,即张开嘴后,嘴型没有变化,只停留在一个位置(请听录音)。

### 练习

not, possible, pot, modern, fog, bomb, college, popular, hobby, hot, dot, mock, shop, stock 注意: /D/ 这个音在美音中读作 /a:/。

#### 对比 练习

now v. not

- pout v. pot
- foul v. fog

cow v. cot
house v. hobby

down v. dot

mouse v. mock

/s:/ 的发音有点像"沃",保留"沃"后半部分的发音就可以了(请听录音)。

练习

for, horse, more, short, store, four, court, course, mourn, warm, quarter, small, wall, tall, hall, ball

比较特别的是,如果元音组合里有 r,美国人通常会卷舌,读成 /ɔ:r/(请听录音),比如 for、 horse、more、short 等。如果元音组合里没有 r,美国人通常读成 /ɑ:/,和上面 /ɒ/ 的美音读法是 一样的,比如 talk、walk、bought、thought 等。

🛡 /n/ v. /l/

/n/和/l/都是鼻音,很多西南地区的同学,由于受到方言影响,容易n、l不分。那么,该如 何正确发出这两个音呢?

首先,发 /n/时,你的舌尖一定要顶到上齿龈,练习的时候可以夸张点,以 "呢" 结尾。真正 说的时候放松,不用说 "呢",但舌尖还是要顶上去(请听录音)。

练习

notion, fashion, animation, question, can, begin, in, on, been, town, station, intonation

接下来,我们一起来看 /l/如何发音。练习时,不要单独读 /l/,在前面加上一个 /ə/,读成 /əl/。同时,在后面再加上一个 /ə/,读出 "了"的感觉。真正说的时候,把最后的 /ə/ 去掉(请听录音)。

练习

bill, fill, feel, full, beautiful, fool, pool, school, sell, bell, deal, reveal, thrill, film, field, fall

/θ/ v. /ð/

/θ//δ/两个音也很容易混淆,因为它们的字母组合通常都是 th。究竟什么时候发 /θ/,什么时候 发 /δ/,需要查字典,没有一以贯之的辨别方法。比如,"呼吸"的名词形式 breath 中的 th 发 /θ/ 的 音,而动词形式 breathe 中的 th 发 /δ/ 的音。

发 / θ/ 的音时用力吐舌头, 舌头越往外吐越好, 练习时请足够夸张(请听录音)。

练习

think, thought, thick, thin, thanks, three, thirty, teeth, mouth

需要注意, /0/ 和 /s/ 是不一样的, 发 /s/ 不需要咬舌 (请听录音)。

#### 对比 练习

think v. sink

thought v. sought

thick v. sick

mouth v. mouse

/ð/是浊辅音,练习时,在/θ/的发音的基础上震动声带,就是/ð/。如何检验声带是否震动 呢?伸出右手的食指,放在喉结的位置,是否能感觉到声带的震动?能,那就对了。发/ð/的音时 还是要用力吐舌头。

#### 练习

that, this, those, these, though, thus, there, their

需要注意, /ð/ 和 /z/ 的发音是不一样的, 发 /z/ 的音不需要咬舌(请听录音)。clothes 这个单词比较特殊, /kləʊz/ 和 /kləʊðz/ 都是正确的读音。

## 🖣 中国不同地区考生易错音

在多年教学实践中,我们发现有一部分(并不是全部)来自特定地区的考生,受方言影响,存 在发音问题的共性。

来自东北的同学,有可能发不准元音 /æ/、/e/、/aɪ/;

来自山东的同学,习惯把双元音 /au/、/aɪ/ 发成单元音 /p/、/e/;

来自西南的同学, /n/和 /l/容易傻傻分不清;

来自广东及东南沿海的同学,有可能吞掉尾音,或者在尾音后面添加/t/、/s/的音;

来自山东、安徽、河南的同学,有可能尾音发得太重,比如把 and 变成 ander、 it 变成 iter。

世界上没有两片相同的树叶。哪怕你不是来自该地区,也有可能会有相似的发音问题。反过来, 并不是来自该地区的考生,就一定有上述的问题。这只是经验性的总结,仅供大家参考。

## • 连读(普通连读)

当一个单词以辅音结尾,下一个单词以元音开头,两个单词之间要连读。

我们先来看一组表达中的连读现象:

name is = namis

pick up a language = piku pa language

come in = co min

take out = takout

fade away = fadaway

sell it = sellit

the notion is = the notionis

from America = fromamerica

have a cup of tea = hava cu pof tea

speak English well = speakEnglish well make it easy = makiteasy this app is good = thisappis good part of the room = par tof the room 再来看一组句子中的连读现象: My name^is XXX. His music^is very catchy and the words^are romantic. I want^to speak^English like^a native speaker. In^order to succeed, she works hard^every day.

We should never give^up.

People^often say, "Time^is money".

I bought^it and then^I lost^it.

## ● 失去爆破(特殊连读)

爆破音 (p、b、t、d、k、g) 与大部分辅音相邻,前面的爆破音留住位置,但不读出声音 (失去爆破) ——急刹车的感觉。

September, postcard, goodbye, blackboard, grandmother, atmosphere, admit, investment, advice, absolutely, definitely

我们看一组句子中的失去爆破和连读现象,做综合练习。

Good^morning. Good^afternoon. Good^evening. Good^night.

Most^people like^to go travelling in the summer.

I use^email to communicate^with my teacher about^my essays.

My mom took^great^care of me when^I was^a child.

I'm not^crazy about^shopping coz^I find^it^really tiring.

## • 语调高低变化

语调高低变化更加准确的说法是重读和弱读。重读就是读某个词的时候声音稍微大一些,音调 稍微高一些,时间稍微长一些。弱读便完全相反。重读词通常由实义词(名词、动词、形容词、副词) 构成。刚开始练习的时候要足够夸张,高低变化要足够明显。

练习

I can make it.

He likes to grab a coffee after work.

I never go to museums.

It's a wonderful day for a walk in the park. The traffic in my hometown is quite bad. Jimmy told me that he would come.

还有几点需要注意:

## 🖳 在实义词中,名词的发音会更重一些

## 练习

Jimmy likes the snow. Lily is going to America. Nelly teaches English. The boy comes from China. Adam lives in Korea. Jerry makes music. John sells apples. Children love ice cream. My friends often go shopping. Stella goes to the pool every week.

## 在实义词的修饰性搭配中, 被修饰的词发音会更重一些

### 练习

It's a good book. What a small room. She is a lovely girl. It's a gorgeous park. Beijing is a modern city. The book is really good. The room is pretty small. This park is very gorgeous. The soup is quite cold. Math is very hard.

## - 中国考生常见错误:重读代词

读一读以下句子:

I like it.

He saw me.

They have it.

She knows him.

It's not very important to me.

It's nice of him to do it.

I need something.

They should call someone.

We need to go somewhere to relax.

## ● 复合名词中, 一般是前重后轻

一个复合名词中包括两个单词,这两个单词既可以写到一起也可以分开,但它们组成了一个意思。对比以下四组词:

a white house v. the White House	a hot girl v. a hotdog
一个白色的房子 v. 白宫	一个性感的女孩 v. 一个热狗
a beautiful station v. a subway station	a new ball v. a football
一个美丽的车站 v. 一个地铁站	一个新的球 v. 一个足球

#### 练习

bus stop, newspaper, television, airport, passport, coffeeshop, girlfriend, boyfriend, parking lot, washroom, bedroom, living room, greenhouse, haircut, Superman, grownup, overcoat, classroom, supermarket, goldfish

## ● 名词性物主代词通常会重读,因为它们被当作名词看待

名词性物主代词有: mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs

练习

That ticket is mine.

This is yours.

We bought ours yesterday.

My notebook is red. Hers is yellow.

## ean't通常会重读

#### 练习

I can't go to the party tomorrow.

He can't make it on time.

My mother tells me I can't be late for school.

#### 对比

I can go to the party tomorrow.

I can make it on time.

## 语意上强调的词要重读

练习

I'm not going to school today. (强调想去的是学校) I'm not going to school today. (强调今天) I'm not going to school today. (强调不去学校) He stole some money from me. (强调偷的是钱) He stole some money from me. (强调命钱的是他) He stole some money from me. (强调偷钱的是他) He stole some money from me. (强调命钱的是他)

学习完"高"的部分,我们再来看看哪些词需要"低",如何"低"。

通过刚才的学习,我们掌握了实义词要重读的规律。除实义词(名词、动词、形容词、副词) 之外的所有词,都叫作功能词。在句子中不被重读的功能词通常会被略读,即轻轻一读、一带而过。 一般情况下,被略读的功能词中的元音会读成 /ə/。

以 can 为例, 它在略读的时候读作 /kən/。

#### 练习

I can wait.

I can play basketball.

We can go shopping during public holidays.

注意:在一些情况下,功能间要读它瘫束的音。

1. 当这些功能词在语意上被强调的时候。

Yes, I can make it. It's not that I can't.

This gift is for John. It's not from him.

2. 当它后边没有其他词时。

Yes, I think I can.

I don't think I should do that, but I would.

我们总结了一些常见的略读词:

can, at, as, are, or, for, your, was, will, that(连词), to, and, of, have(助动词), has(助动词), had(助动词)

### 练习

• can /kən/ (strong form /kæn/)

can run, can cook, can win

I can run fast.

She can cook.

Everyone says I can win.

I can't promise anything, but I will do what I can.

• as /əz/ (strong form /æz/)

as soon as, as much as, as easy as

I'll try to do that as soon as possible.

I don't work out as much as before.

Life will never be as easy as it is now.

• are /ə(r)/ (strong form /ɑ:(r)/)

Yes, they are.

are pretty boring, are quite nice, are gorgeous Some newspapers are pretty boring. Chinese people are quite nice. The views are gorgeous there. for /fə(r)/ (strong form /fɔ:(r)/)

for me, for fun, for 20 years

When my uncle told me the toy was for me, I was really happy.

I ride a bike every day for fun.

I've been living here for 20 years.

There was a big table in the room. I didn't know what that was for.

• will /wəl/ (strong form /wɪl/)

I will never, I will go, we will live

I will never move to another city.

I guess I will go to parks more often in the future.

We will live here for the rest of our lives.

Yes, I will.

• to /tə/(后面的词以辅音字母开头时)

to learn, to study, to jump, to school

English is quite easy to learn.

I'm going to study overseas.

I had no choice but to jump.

I'm not going to school today.

I want to eat it. (这里的 to 不略读,因为后面的词 eat 以元音字母开头,而非辅音字母)

• and /ənd//ən/ (strong form /ænd/)

Nice and easy, you and I Rock n' roll, hot and cold fish and chips, bread and butter happy and proud, noodles and dumplings I feel extremely happy and proud of myself. I really like eating noodles and dumplings. • of /əv/ (strong form /pv/)

a lot of water, out of date, nice of him There was a lot of water in the room. Nokia is out of date.

It was very nice of him.

• have /əv/ (strong form /hæv/)

would have done

should have done

must have done

I would have done it if I were you.

You should have come earlier.

They must have lived in America before.

in in

当 have 作助动词的时候,通常可以略读为 /həv/,在这里主要学习 would/should/must have done 这种形式。



# 第3章

# 雅思口语真经

# 十六字总纲

在学为贵真经体系下,听说读写理论都有自己原创的最高教学指导思想,我们称之为真经总纲。 雅思口语真经总纲是下面十六个字。希望你能理解,并能记忆。

"背诵输入,句型为重。自然放松,逻辑沟通。"

## (() 背诵输入

在任何语言学习中,背诵,都是必经之路。

但特别需要澄清的是,很多考生希望通过背诵所谓的"标准答案""模板答案"来骗过考官,获 得理想分数,这是不可行的。因为"如何辨别考生是否背诵"是每位考官职业培训的重要内容,任何 背诵的蛛丝马迹在考官面前将无所遁形,你"骗"不了考官。

有考生可能会问: "不对啊,我身边就有朋友背了个答案,然后过了呀。"

但是,当你去听这位朋友的英文时,你会发现,他就算不背答案,英文也不错。他的发音、语 感和流利度可能都很好。那么,他在考场上背的内容,考官有可能会相信,就是他应有的水平。 其实,他不背答案,也照样能过。 而且,整篇背诵"标准答案",也是低效的练习方法。

我们小时候学语文,全文背诵过《岳阳楼记》。你现在还能记得的,还能用的,可能只是里面 的一个经典句子: "先天下之忧而忧,后天下之乐而乐。"

所以,直接背诵经典的、能使用的句型,更加高效。

接下来,我们一起来看,在学为贵真经体系教学中,我们不要求学生背诵整篇答案,但我们要 求你背这些。

● 词汇

1) 不要背诵单词书

你是否有过这样的经历:在备考任何考试前,会找一本词汇书,上来就背单词。最后发现,世 界上最遥远的距离,是 abandon 到 zoo 的距离。这是费时又极其低效的方法。因为在背诵单个单词 的时候,你并不知道这个词如何使用,在考场上完全用不上。你必须在情境中去学习。

3 话题词汇

比起直接背诵厚厚的单词书,我们更需要背诵相关话题词汇,比如 hometown、sports、movies等。 而且,每个话题的词汇不在于多,而在于你是否能使用。背诵一个词之后,立刻用"逆向推导"的方 法,想想这个词能用在哪些口语题中,马上使用它。比如,你背了一个词 hospitable(热情好客的), 在形容人的时候就可以使用。在谈到 hometown 时,你可以说: The locals are very hospitable. 在谈到 cities 时,你可以说: The people living there are very hospitable.

3 特殊功能性词汇

特殊功能性词汇包括连接词、动词词组、习语等。

(1) 连接词

例如: because (因为)、so (所以)、as for (至于)。

要注意避开一个误区:背太多连接词的替换词。比如,你一口气背了很多 because 的替换词, since、as、due to the fact that、for the reason that 等,这是没有帮助的。机械地替换、为了替换而替换, 都没有意义。

(2) 动词词组

例如: cut back on sth. (减少)、 hang out (待着; 玩)、 go on (继续; 发生)。

一般来说,一个动词加上一个介词或者副词,叫作动词词组。备考期间,除了积累背诵,更 重要的是,多思考这些动词词组如何使用在雅思口语话题中,也就是"逆向推导"。比如,背诵了 cut back on sth. 这个词组,可以用在话题 computer 中,造句: I have to cut back on how long I use the computer, because I'm addicted to it. 或者用在话题 friends 中,造句: I have some fair weather friends and I need to cut back on spending time with them. (3) 习语

例如: a walk in the park (简单)、 blow my top (大发雷霆)、 go out of one's way (竭尽全力)。

同样地,积累习语后立刻"逆向推导",使用在口语回答中。比如,积累了 a walk in the park, 联想到话题 teenagers 里的 Do you like to spend time with teenagers?可以用在回答中: Yes, I do. I really like to hang out with my brother, who is only sixteen years old. When we hang out together, we just play some computer games. My brother's favourite is Call of Duty(使命召唤,一款游戏). To him, it's just a walk in the park, so he always teaches me how to play the game.

## ● 句子

背诵句子可以帮助考生提高语感、提高语法水平。语感是非常重要的,因为考官在你张口后没 多久,就能判断出你的英语水平如何。

推荐: 在微信公众号 ielts-shuaige 里, 每周一到周五会免费推送 "每日背三句", 供大家反复朗读, 反复模仿, 好的语感需要通过背诵大量句子来培养。另外,本书中也有大量例句, 建议大家反复阅读、努力背诵。

## ● 观点

在备考过程中,多积累一些观点,能够帮助你有话可说。但要注意,并不是一定要有观点。在 十六字真经总纲的"自然放松"中将会有详细说明。

## (() 句型为重

在口语备考过程中,真经派不推荐考生过多研究语法理论,如定语从句、倒装句、主语从句、 助动词等,而是积累句型。句型=语法,每一个句型的背后就是一条语法规则。比如,你希望掌握 not only do I..., but I also...,除了背熟这个句型,还要背诵若干例句:

Not only do I like you, but I also like her.

Not only do I want to go to Australia, but I also want to go to the US.

Not only do I think it's a good way to unwind, but I also think it's very good exercise.

Not only do I learn English, but I also learn Japanese.

背完这四个例句后,你就自然而然地掌握了部分倒装语法点,从而造出其他的句子。

## (() 自然放松

把雅思口语考试当成在酒吧和朋友聊天的考生,真实成绩往往会多 0.5 分。

把雅思口语考试当成在考场问答或者答辩的考生,真实成绩往往会少0.5分。

两者的区别在于,在自然放松的状态下,交流会更加有效。

雅思口语是英语考试,更是英文沟通能力、交流能力的考试。遇到难题或不会回答的题,你完 全可以说我不知道,然后闲扯聊下去,这在日常生活中很正常啊。观点不重要,表达能力才重要。 与雅思写作不同,口语并不要求观点新颖,论证科学严谨,最重要的是在聊天中向考官展示你的语 言沟通能力,而不是知识储备和智商水平。It's not a test of your knowledge or intelligence; It's a test of your communicative abilities.

在"背诵输入"这一点中,我们强调过不要背诵答案来备考,因为背答案不是自然放松的聊天 过程。

## (() 逻辑沟通

逻辑沟通是真经派最核心竞争力,在听说读写四项考试中都很重要。我们主要来看看口语方面。 在上一章中,我们讲解了雅思口语的四项评分标准。其中,流利度和连贯性这一项,是需要逻辑的。 连贯性就是由前一句推出后一句,每一句话之间是顺畅连接的。显然,有逻辑能让思路清晰,回答 有层次,从而提高连贯性。有逻辑同时能提高流利度。原本考生可能说完第一句话,想不出第二句 话该说什么,在想的过程中流利度大打折扣。但是,当考生知道如何一句推一句,有逻辑地拓展时, 流利度势必得以提升。

接下来,我们以三道 Part 1 题目,来展示如何有效地进行逻辑沟通。

#### (1) Do you want to live with your family in the future?

一部分考生听到题目后, 第一反应可能是: Yes I do, because I love my family. 但不知后面该 说什么。运用逻辑拓展法, 你可以进一步解释 love my family 的原因: My family members are very nice. They are really good people. 然后给出具体的表现: Every day we just hang out with each other. 每 天和家人待在一块儿做什么呢? 还可以继续给出更加具体的内容: We watch TV together, go for a walk in the park, play Mahjong together and so on. I'm always pretty happy when I hang out with them. 跟家人在一起很开心,最后推出结果: So I just don't want to move away from my family members.

把思路串联起来,形成以下回答:

Yes I do, because I love my family. (解释) You know, my family members are very nice. They are really good people and (表现) every day we just hang out with each other. (具体) We watch TV together, go for a walk in the park, play Mahjong together and so on. I'm always pretty happy when I hang out with them, (结果) so I just don't want to move away from my family members.

#### (2) What subject did you like in high school?

假如一名考生这么回答: Well, my favourite subject was English because my English teacher was so good-looking. 在考试中,偶尔一两道题这么回答,也行,但是如果每道题都这样回答,就展现不出 你的水平。那么,如何环环相扣地继续说下去呢?可以进一步解释,英语老师长得好看跟你喜欢这 门课有什么关系: Because he was very handsome, I just really enjoyed watching him talk and teach. 说到 教学,继续描述其表现: No matter what he taught, I listened very attentively. 说到认真听讲,可以继续 推出结果: Since I always paid a lot of attention in his class, my English was really good back then.

把思路串联起来,形成以下回答:

Well, my favourite subject was English because my English teacher was so good-looking. (原因) Because he was very handsome, I just really enjoyed watching him talk and teach. (表现) No matter what he taught,

I listened very attentively. (结果) Since I always paid a lot of attention in his class, my English was really good back then.

#### (3) Do you like reading magazines?

先一起来阅读这道题的回答,看看能不能发现"另辟蹊径"的逻辑。

No, I don't, because um... well, I'm not sure... it's just that...in my spare time, I usually watch movies on my computer or listen to music or read books. I don't feel like there's anything wrong with reading magazines, I just like some other things better.

细心的你有任何发现么?

对了,就是"我不是不喜欢看杂志,我只是更喜欢别的"的逻辑。那么,举一反三,是否喜欢 看电视、是否喜欢听音乐、是否喜欢看电影、是否喜欢读报纸等问题,是不是同样可以套用这个 逻辑来回答呢?比如,我不是不喜欢看电视,只是更喜欢看小说、打游戏。

通过这三道 Part 1 题目,我们初步学习了如何有效地进行逻辑沟通。更多关于逻辑沟通的方法, 大家可以阅读"流利度和连贯性"部分的内容,进行更深层的学习。当然,\*还需要通过更多的练习, 熟练应用。





第4章

# 口语素材大全

## (() Part 1 回答五大准则

- ◆ 准则 1:能扩展则充分扩展,不能扩展则自信停下。很多同学担心自己在 Part 1 说的太多,被考 官打断,会影响分数。其实不会的。你的分数和是否被打断没有关系。所以我们建议考 生碰到可以充分发挥的题目,就充分扩展答案,证明自己的口语实力。但是,如果偶尔 碰到实在不知道说什么的题目,也可以回答一两句话之后自信停下。
- ◆ 准则 2: 扩展答案的时候可以采取在说出答案之后再给出原因的方式,也可以给出与答案有关的 更多细节,如说完 I'm quite into music 之后可以说自己为什么喜欢 music,也可以说自 己喜欢什么类型的 music、最喜欢的歌手是谁、多久听一次 music 等。给出原因和细节 的方法可以搭配在一起使用。具体扩展答案的方法见第2章"官方评分标准真经"的"流 利度"部分。
- ◆ 准则 3: 回答时要给出完整的句子,而不是蹦词。如,问题是 How many people are there in your family? 回答: Three people. 这是不好的回答,最好说: Well, there are three people in my family, my parents and me.
- ◆ 准则 4: Part 1 是考生与考官的一问一答,有一点 conversation (对话)的感觉,所以我们建议考生 在沟通中一定要自然、轻松,就像在酒吧和朋友聊天一样。可以偶尔使用填充词 um、 well、you know、I mean 等,也可以偶尔向考官承认自己没有想法、需要一点时间思考。 比如: Um, well, I have no idea what to say. This is a little embarrassing.或者: I haven't thought about it before. let me see. 还可以说: Why do I like shopping? Um, well, I guess it's because...

◆ 准则 5: 尽量使用口语化、生活化的语言, 少用大词难词。

## ((/ Part 1 练习方法

- ◆方法 1: 熟练掌握"流利度"部分的逻辑扩展方法。
- ◆ 方法 2: 学习本章 Part 1 例题的范例答案,积累词汇、句型、连接性表达。
- ◆方法 3: 听范例答案录音,改善发音;反复朗读范例答案,提高语感,并在此过程中掌握 Part 1 回答逻辑。
- ◆ 方法 4: 在"学为贵雅思" app 找到当季的 Part 1 题库,按照题库练习答题。
- ◆方法 5: 自己练习 Part 1 题目时均以录音的方式进行──给自己的回答录音,答完一遍之后,听自己的回答,把听到的词汇、语法、逻辑、发音等方面的问题记下来,并思考可以把哪些词汇和句型替换成更地道的语言。再录一遍、再听、再录、再听。每道题至少录音回答三次。
- ◆方法 6:找一个同样在准备雅思考试或英语口语较好的同学协助自己练习。让这位同学充当雅思考官的角色,提出问题,模拟雅思考试现场。

注意:我们不建议大家完全背诵范俐答案。范俐答案是笱了帮助各位考生积累语言储备、学习 逻辑思路。大家应尽量说出自己的回答。

## (() Part 1 范例答案

### Work or study

**Q** Are you a student or do you have a job?

A1: I have a job and I've been working as an accountant for five years.

A2: I'm a university student and I study accounting. I've been studying it for three years and I'm going to graduate next year.

#### **Q** Do you like your job?

A: Well, not really. I can't say I'm a fan of my job because it's super stressful. I always have to work overtime on weekdays and there's even work to do on the weekend from time to time. More importantly, the pay isn't that satisfying. The reason I'm taking this test is because I want to study overseas so that I can be more competitive in the job market and find a better-paying job.

#### Why did you choose this job?

*A*: I chose this job as a Chinese teacher mainly because I had always been crazy about Chinese literature. Reading was my only pastime when I was growing up, so studying Chinese literature and then becoming a Chinese teacher seemed like a natural option.

#### **(Q)** Do you plan to change jobs in the future?

A: Yes, I do, and this is partly why I'm sitting here today taking this test. What I'm doing isn't exactly my dream job—I'm doing this only because I believed it would have good job security. But

after several years of being in this field, I've realised that I really have to pursue my dream, which is to become a fashion designer, and this is why I'm going to further my studies in the UK.

#### Why did you choose this major?

A: I chose to study advertising because...um...in fact, it's not because I'm passionate about this field or anything; it's just when I was choosing what to study, I thought it would be fun designing stuff and trying to be creative and imaginative all the time. The thing is, I'm not that creative, so I'm doing pretty badly in this major.

#### What are you going to do after you finish your studies?

A: Well, I'm not quite sure. You know, with my major, Korean, I can do basically anything and it also means nothing. By anything I mean, no matter what it is, as long as it's somewhat related to this language, I c an do it. But it also means that I don't have any competitive edge over other job applicants when it comes to applying for a job that calls for further expertise.

的

#### 词汇 Key Words

- work as... 做 ······的工作
  - I'm in charge of ...
  - =I'm responsible for...
  - =My responsibilities include... 我负责……
- stressful ['stresfl] adj. 给人很大压力的 stress-free 没有压力的
  - a demanding job 一份要求很高的工作

a rewarding job 一份有意义的 / 令人满意的 工作

a mind-numbing job 一份超级无聊的工作 a well-paid job 一份薪水高的工作 a low-paying job 一份薪水低的工作 a dead-end job 一份没有出路的工作 quit = resign 辞职

- work overtime 加班 a nine-to-five job 一份朝九晚五的工作 clock in 打卡上班 clock out 打卡下班
- the pay 工资 (= the salary)

- satisfying ['sætɪsfaɪɪŋ] adj. 令人满意的
   be satisfied with sth. 对……感到满意
- study overseas 出国学习(=study abroad)
   further my studies overseas/abroad 出国继 续我的学业
- competitive [kəm'petətɪv] adj. 有竞争力

in the job market 在工作市场上

• a natural option 一个很自然的选择

● dream job 梦想的工作

pursue a career in advertising 追求在广告 业的职业生涯



- good job security 好的工作保障
- creative [krɪ'eɪtɪv] adj. 有创造力的
- imaginative [I'mædʒɪnətɪv] adj. 有想象力的
- do badly 做得不好
- somewhat ['sʌmwpt] adj. 有点(=a little)
- be related to sth. 和……有关系
- competitive edge 竞争优势
- job applicant 工作申请者(=job candidate)

apply for a job 申请工作

a job opening 一个工作空缺 (需要新的员工)

be fired = be sacked = be given the boot 被开除

- call for 需要 (= require)
- expertise [,eksp3:'ti:z] n. 专业技能

## J Hometown

Q Tell me something about your hometown.

*A:* My hometown is Xi'an, which is a city with a lot of history. If I'm not mistaken, we have a history of over 3,000 years, and because of this, you can see myriad places of historical importance here, like Emperor Qin's Mausoleum—this is where the Terracotta Warriors are. We also have quite a few other places that are very popular with visitors. At the same time, my hometown is pretty modern as well. I mean, we see a lot of high-rises springing up every year...

#### Q Is that a big city or a small place?

A: Well, I'd say that my hometown is pretty big, it's large actually because it takes several hours for people drive from one side to another. In fact, I've done it before. One time, I drove from the northeast of my hometown to the southwest and it took me five hours, which can definitely prove how big it is.

#### What do you like most about your hometown?

A: Oh, as a matter of fact, there are tons of things that I adore about where I live, but if I had to pick a favourite, I'd say it would be the food, which is super good. In my opinion, Xi'an food is the best nationwide. In particular, I'm a huge fan of 肉 夹馍, which can be seen as our own style of burger. I think it's incredibly palatable.

#### Is there anything you dislike about it?

*A:* Well, I suppose traffic is a big problem—it's bumper-to-bumper every day. This is because, first of all, we have a huge population and therefore there's a large number of vehicles on the roads. Plus, a lot of people don't follow the traffic regulations, which creates chaos sometimes. So yeah, I do think that the local government should come up with ways to tackle the problem.

#### Q Do you think you will continue living there for a long time?

*A*: Um, I'm not sure. You know, I've never thought about this before. I'm going to study in Australia and I will be there for three years. What will I do afterwards? I can't be certain now. I mean, perhaps I'll just stay there and find a job, or maybe I'll come home. There's plenty of time for me to make a decision.

#### 词汇 Key Words

a city with a lot of history 有悠久历史的城市
 (= a historical city = an ancient city)

a historic site = a place of historical importance 古迹

we have a history of...years 我们有……年的 历史

date back to ... years ago 可以追溯到……年前

 myriad ['mɪrɪəd] adj. 很多 (= tons of = loads of = many)

- mausoleum [,mɔ:sə'li:əm] n. 陵墓
   Terracotta Warriors 兵马俑
- be popular with sb. 在……中间很流行 sth. is getting more and more popular = sth. is becoming/getting increasingly popular = sth. is growing in popularity……越来越流行
- high-rise ['har'raɪz] n. 高楼大厦 skyscraper 摩天大楼 shopping mall 商场 department store 百货大楼 boutique 精品店 office building 办公楼 apartment building 公寓楼
- spring up 迅速出现
   develop rapidly = develop at a fast pace/speed
   很快地发展
- as a matter of fact 事实上(=in fact=actually)

● if I had to pick a favourite, I'd say... 如果 我必须得选一个最喜欢的话,我觉得…… ● nationwide [,neɪʃn'waɪd] *adv.* 在全国范 围内

> all over the country 在全国 worldwide 在世界范围内 all over the world 在全世界

● be seen as 被当作, 被看作(=be considered as = be regarded as)

- incredibly [In<sup>9</sup>kredəblɪ] adv. 非常地 (=
   extremely = super = very)
- <sup>′</sup>● palatable ['pælətəbl] *adj.* 好吃的,美味 的 (= tasty = scrumptious = luscious = delicious)

bumper-to-bumper ['bʌmpətə'bʌmpə]
 adj. (交通) 很拥堵的

be stuck in traffic = be/get caught up in traffic 堵在路上

drive sb. up the wall = get under sb.'s skin 令某人很不爽

I can't stand sth. 我不能忍受……

I'm tired of sth. 我厌烦了……

 a huge population 很大的人口数量 be densely populated 人口密度大



- traffic regulations 交通规则
- chaos ['keips] n. 混乱
- come up with 想出

● tackle the problem 解决问题(=solve the problem)

• certain ['s3:tn] adj. 确定的(=sure)

### Home/Accommodation

**Q** Do you live in a house or a flat/apartment?

A: I live in an apartment and I've been living there for three years.

Q Can you tell me something about your flat/apartment?

*A*: Um, sure. My apartment is not very big coz housing prices are sky-high in my hometown and I can't afford to buy a huge apartment. There are two bedrooms, a small living room, a kitchen and a balcony where I like to do some reading or listen to music. I also stand there and do a little bit of stargazing sometimes, if the weather's good and I can see stars of course.

Which part of your home do you like the most?

*A*: Well, I guess it should be the balcony coz like I said, I do quite a few fun and relaxing things there. But another place that I also dig is the kitchen because I'm a cooking expert haha. I'm particularly good at making Japanese food. So if I'm not very busy, I might just be in the kitchen cooking something.

#### Q Do you plan to live there for a long time?

*A:* Yeah, I think so. I've only lived there for three years, which is a very short amount of time. I'm convinced that I will live there for many years to come. Plus, everything is convenient around there—the subway station is within walking distance; there are three supermarkets nearby; there's a kindergarten only 300 metres away, for my future kid of course. So yeah, I don't see any reason why I should move.

#### in Key Words

● in an apartment 在一间公寓里 (注意冠词 用 an )

- housing prices are sky-high 房价极高 housing prices have gone through the roof 房 价涨得特别快
- can't afford to do sth. 负担不起……
- stargazing ['sto:gerzɪŋ] n. 观星(看星星) stargazer 观星者

- quite a few 很多 (= many)
- relaxing [rr'læksɪŋ] adj. 令人放松的 relaxed 感到放松的

Reading is relaxing. Reading makes me relaxed.

dig [dig] v 喜欢……(=adore=have
 a penchant for = be quite into = like)

for many years to come 在未来很多年

- expert ['eksp3:t] n. 专家
- a short amount of time 很短的时间
- 时间●I don't see any reason why... 我想不到
- I'm convinced that 我确定……(=I bet =I 任何……的原因

believe = I'm sure = I'm certain )

## Fruits and vegetables

#### What kind of fruit do you like?

*A:* Well, I'm into various kinds of fruit like durians, pomelos, tangerines and so forth. But I suppose my favourite should be tangerines coz they're not only luscious, but also easy to peel and eat.

#### Did you like to eat fruit when you were a child?

A: Yes, I did. I was crazy about eating fruit. In fact, I've loved eating fruit all my life. When I was growing up, I would eat some cherries or kiwi fruit or grapes every day<sup>3</sup> during or after dinner. When I was watching television with my parents, I would be snacking on something too. I guess fruit has always been part and parcel of my life.

#### **Q** Is it important to eat fruit?

A: Yeah, without a doubt. I believe it's of great importance to eat fruit on a regular basis, or even on a daily basis because they're beneficial to people's health. Fruits are rich in vitamins and other nutrients that I don't know. In fact, I've even read an article that said that those people who eat a big amount of fruit tend to live longer lives than those who don't. So, yeah, fruits are vital for people.

#### 词汇 Key Words

• durian ['dʊərɪən] n. 榴梿

pomelo 柚子

tangerine 橘子

cherry 樱桃

kiwi fruit 猕猴桃

grape 葡萄

● luscious ['lʌʃəs] *adj.* 美味的,可口的(= delicious = palatable = scrumptious)

- peel [pi:l] v. 剥皮
- when I was growing up 在我小的时候 (= when I was a child)

 snack on something 吃些零食 wolf down sth. 狼吞虎咽地吃……

● sth. is part and parcel of my life ……是 我生活中非常重要的一部分



- be rich in... 富含……
- be high/low in sth. ……含量高 / 低
- vitamins ['vaɪtəmɪnz] n. 维生素
- nutrient ['nju:trɪənt] n. 营养物质 nutritious 有营养的

### **Transportation**

#### How did you come here today and why did you choose that?

*A*: Well, I just took the subway here coz it's the most reliable form of transport I think. I knew exactly what time I would get here. However, if I had taken a bus or taxi, I wouldn't have known because there could have been a traffic jam and I could have gotten caught up in it.

What forms of transport do you usually use?

*A:* Um, the subway actually. Not only did I take it today, I take it every day. Every morning I take it to work and it's a 40-minute ride—not too bad. And then, after work, I take it back home. The subway is an important part of my life.

#### Is it convenient to take a bus in your city?

A: Um, I think so. In my opinion, it's pretty convenient because there are bus stations everywhere and you can take the bus to every corner of the city. For instance, there's a station within walking distance of my home and roughly 15 buses come here and go to different parts of the city every day. So yeah, I'd say it's generally pretty good.

#### Is driving popular in your country?

A: Yeah, it sure is. Driving is extremely popular in China because people's living standards are getting higher and higher, and more and more people want to go to different places in a more comfortable way, so an increasing number of people are buying cars. As a result, there are so many cars on the streets every day, which means the traffic is awful in many cities.

#### 词汇 Key Words

 reliable [rɪ'laɪəbl] adj. 可靠的 trustworthy 可信任的

get somewhere on time 准时到某地

be late to/for... 迟到 be running late 要迟到了

take a taxi 乘坐出租车(=take a cab)

do good to people's health 对人身体有 好处

vital ['vartl] adj. 非常重要的 (= important
 = essential = significant = be of great importance)

hail a cab 打手势叫出租车

call a cab 叫出租车

not too bad 还不错

it's OK = it's alright 还可以

it's awesome = it's incredible = it's amazing = it's fantastic 很棒

an important part of my life 我生活中重要的一部分(=an essential part of my life=play a crucial role in my life=part and parcel of my life)

roughly ['rʌflɪ] adv. 差不多; 大致 (= about = approximately)

popular ['popjele(r)] adj. 流行的 (= well-liked
 = enjoy great popularity)

it's getting more and more popular = it's getting increasingly popular 越来越流行 more and more people = an increasing number of people 越来越多的人

living standard 生活水平

awful ['o:fl] adj. 糟糕的(=terrible=
 dreadful=lousy)



### 🦉 Bus or taxi

Q How often do you take the bus?

A: Well, I don't really take the bus very often, so I guess perhaps once in a few months, because most of the time, I commute by subway. This is the most reliable form of transport I think coz there's no traffic underground, right? And also, although it's jam-packed all the time, I know when I can get to my destination, whereas if I take the bus, I might just be caught up in traffic.

When was the first time you took a taxi?

A: Um, it was last Saturday. My girlfriend and I went to the aquarium and since it's a little far from our university and we didn't want to take the bus or subway, we just hailed a cab. The cab driver was pretty nice and the ride was quite comfy.

🔇 What are the advantages of taking a taxi compared to taking the bus?

A: Off the top of my head, it's more comfortable, for sure. When you're taking the bus, you're usually surrounded by tons of people and you can seldom get a seat, which means you might have to stand for a long time, whereas in a taxi...um, it's just comfy, right? Another difference is that you have privacy coz you're alone, with a taxi driver of course. In comparison, on a bus, whatever you do, other people are watching you.

#### 词汇 Key Words

- once a in a few months 几个月一次 rarely = seldom = hardly ever 很少 once in a blue moon 很少; 难得地
- most of the time 大部分时间
- commute [kə'mju:t] v. 通勤
- no traffic 没有堵车

bumper-to-bumper traffic 非常拥堵的交通 the traffic is all tied up 交通很堵 be stuck/caught up in traffic 堵在路上

- aquarium [ə'kweərɪəm] n. 水族馆
- since [sɪns] conj. 由于
- hail a cab 打手势叫出租车
- privacy ['privəsi] n. 隐私



### J Music

#### Q When do you listen to music?

*A*: I listen to music all the time because I am crazy about it. I have to say music is an essential part of my life, so no matter what I do, no matter where I go, I have my earphones on. For example, every morning, on my way to school, I listen to some R&B songs or hip-pop to pass the time.

#### Q How much do you spend listening to music every day?

A: I guess if I add everything up, I probably spend about two hours or even three hours listening to music every day.

#### What kinds of music do you listen to?

*A*: I am a huge fan of music so I listen to all kinds of it, including hip-pop, R&B, rock and roll, country music. I also listen to some classical music from time to time, but if I had to pick a favourite, I suppose maybe it should be country music. When I feel a little down in the dumps, I just listen to some country songs, especially Taylor Swift songs. Her music is pretty therapeutic.

Q Have you ever been to a concert before?

*A*: Yes, I've been to tons of concerts and the last time I went to one was three or four months ago. I went to Jolin's concert in Shanghai. Jolin is a household name in china and I really adore her, so I went there with my mom who likes Jolin as well and we had the time of our lives that day.

#### 词汇 Key Words

 an essential part of my life 我生活中不可 缺少的一部分(=an integral part of my life=an indispensable part of my life)



- have my earphones on 戴着耳机
- pass the time 打发时间
- add sth. up 把……相加
- I'm a huge fan of 我非常喜欢 ······(=I'm

crazy about = I'm quite into = I really like = I adore)

down in the dumps 沮丧的; 伤心的

- therapeutic [θerə'pju:tɪk] adj. 治愈的
- tons of 很多(=many=multiple)
- a household name 家喻户晓的人
  - famous = well-known = renowned 有名的
- have the time of one's life 玩得很开心
   (= have a ball = have a blast)

## Sports

#### What kinds of physical exercise do you like?

A: I really enjoy working out, so in fact I dig many sports, including playing badminton, riding the exercise bike, hitting the gym to lift weights, swimming and so on. As a matter of fact, before coming here, I rode the exercise bike at home for about thirty minutes and it helped me work up a sweat. That made me feel really good.

#### **Q** Do you think children should do sports regularly?

A: Absolutely. There is no doubt that sport should play a vital role in children's lives. in fact, what I think is that it's not just about children; everybody should do the same. Um, regular exercise is important for children in so many ways. For starters, it allows them to lead a healthy life. Nobody should ever lead a sedentary life, so if they do sports on a regular basis, they can be healthier. Another reason is that a lot of sports are team sports, so by participating in them, children can learn how to work with others on a team, how to cooperate and stuff like that, which are very important for them when they grow up.

#### What was your favourite sport when you were young?

A: When I was growing up, I think my favourite sport was playing badminton and I would do it on a daily basis with my parents. Every day after dinner, we would just go to the park near our home and play badminton for about forty or fifty minutes. It was a good opportunity for us to bond and it also helped me live a healthier life.

#### What kinds of sports are popular in China?

A: Many sports are well-liked here, like swimming and jogging. Perhaps swimming is the most popular sport, because every time you go to a public swimming pool, especially in the summer, you will see it's jam-packed with people. In one lane, there are usually dozens of people, so sometimes it makes it a little hard for people to swim.



- work out 运动(=do exercise=take exercise)
- hit the gym 在健身房运动 (= go to the gym
- = work out at the gym)

run on the treadmill 在跑步机上跑步

lift weights 举重

a gym rat 非常喜欢去健身房的人

- work up a sweat 大汗淋漓, 汗流浃背
- there is no doubt 毋庸置疑

without a doubt 毋庸置疑

absolutely = definitely = totally 肯定, 一定

- play a vital role in... 在……中扮演重要角色
   vital = crucial = essential = very important 至
   关重要的
- lead/live a...life 过一种……的生活
   sedentary 久坐的,经常坐着的

on a regular basis 经常; 定期 (=regularly)
 on a daily basis = every day 每天

participate in sth. 参加…… (= take part in sth.)

● a good opportunity to bond 一个培养 感情的好机会

- jam-packed [dʒæm'pækt] adj. 很拥挤的
- lane [leɪn] n. 泳道

## 🖳 Family

Q How often do you meet your family?

A: Well, since I go to university in another city, I can't see my folks very often. I only go back to my parents' during the summer holiday and winter holiday. When I do see them, we just hang out all the time, if they're not super busy, of course. We gab about everything—my studies, my boyfriend, their life, my plans for the future and so on. I really treasure the time I spend with my parents.

Q How do you spend time with your family?

上个问题的答案可以回答这道题。

#### Q Do you want to live with your family in the future?

*A:* I do, but I doubt it's possible. I'll have to move out of my parents' place sooner or later because I'll get hitched and start my own family. I don't have a boyfriend yet, so it won't happen anytime soon, but it will happen.

#### Q How has your family influenced you?

*A:* Well, my family has influenced me in various ways. The first thing that comes to mind is that I'm a positive person because of my dad. He has a positive outlook on life and nothing ever bothers him, so over the years, I've learned from him to take it easy. Additionally, I'm a pretty good cook and I should give a shout-out to my mom. She began teaching me cooking when I was still a teenager and now I can cook a variety of dishes, which I think is a wonderful skill.

#### 词汇 Key Words

- my folks 我的家人(=my family members)
- my parents' 我父母家 (= my parents' place)
- hang out 待着;玩[=chill (out) with sb.]
- gab [gæb] v. 闲聊 (= chat)
- treasure ['treʒə(r)] v. 珍惜 precious 珍贵的 quality time 美好时光
- sooner or later 迟早
- get hitched 结婚(=tie the knot=get married)

anytime soon 在不久的将来(= in the near future)

in various ways 在很多方面

● the first...that comes to mind 第一个出现 在我脑海中的……

> off the top of my head 我的第一反应是,我 立刻想到的是

 have a positive outlook on life 有一个积极 的人生态度 have a positive frame of mind 心态积极 sb. is a glass-half-full kind of person 某人 是个乐观的人

an optimist 一个乐观主义者

- a pessimist 一个悲观主义者
- bother sb. 使某人烦恼
- ≠● over the years, I have... 这么多年来, 我……
  - take it easy 放松; 从容
  - give a shout-out to sb. 向某人表示感谢



## **Friends**

#### Q Do you have many friends?

A: Yes, I think so. I'm a people person and I love to go out to meet new people and make friends. Every weekend, I meet up with some of my friends in a bar or someplace else and we have fun together. I also like to throw parties in my apartment and invite friends over to cook, eat, drink and play games together. I'm someone that can't live without friends.

#### Do you remember your friends in primary school?

A: Um... primary school, well, it's been so long—it's been about 20 years now, so honestly I don't remember all of my friends from back then. There are only a few of them that I'm still in touch with. Not only are we in touch, but we're still very close and we often hang out together now. When we meet up with each other, sometimes we reminisce about some fond memories we had before.

#### Q How do you make friends?

A: Um, I make friends in various ways. For example, I often go to parties or throw parties myself where I can meet new people and I quite enjoy striking up conversations with them. It's very easy for me to make new friends this way. Plus, I'm a member of a local book club. You know, I'm a bookworm and being part of a book club is something amazing to me. This is where I often see some new faces and they become my friends soon after we meet.

#### Do you like chatting with friends online?

A: No, I'm not really a huge fan of that because um...I feel that chatting with people online with only words and emojis is way too impersonal. I prefer to meet friends in the flesh and talk with them with more emotion. I think this is much better communication.

#### 词汇 Key Words

- a people person 喜欢社交的人
- sociable 喜欢 / 擅长社交的 socialise 社交
- meet up with... 和某人见面聊天
- throw a party 举行派对

   a party animal = an avid party-goer 喜欢派对
   的人
- can't live without... 不能没有……
- it's been so long 已经好久了 (=it's been

#### a long time = it's been ages)

- back then 那个时候
- be in touch with sb. 和某人保持联系
  - keep in touch with sb. = stay in touch with sb. 和……保持联系

lose touch with sb. 和……失去联系

get back in touch with sb. 和……恢复联系

- hang out together 一起玩; 一起待着
- reminisce about sth. 回忆……
- fond memories 美好的回忆
- a bookworm 喜欢读书的人 (= an avid book reader)
  - soon after... 在……不久之后
  - emoji [ɪ'məʊdʒɪ] n. 表情符号(网络)
- impersonal [ɪm'pɜ:sənl] adj. 缺乏人情
   味的
  - in the flesh 当面 (= in person)



## **Teachers**

#### What kind of teachers do you like best?

A: Well, off the top of my head, I'd say good-looking teachers, haha. I say it for a good reason. You know, teachers who are handsome or pretty can attract students to pay more attention in class, which leads to better academic performance I think. Another quality that I think teachers should have is a sense of humour coz everybody likes those who are hilarious. My middle school history teacher was hysterical and he was always able to crack us up. Most of my classmates adored his lessons.

#### Who was your favourite teacher when you were young?

*A*: Um, I suppose it must have been my high school Chinese teacher, Mr. Li, who was extremely knowledgeable. He was a walking encyclopedia and whenever we had any questions, no matter what it was about, he would know the answer. I really looked up to him.

#### Would you want to be a teacher in the future?

A: No, I don't think so. Being a teacher is too much responsibility and I don't suppose I would want so heavy a burden on me. Plus, I'm neither good-looking, funny, or well-read, so I don't think I'm capable of being a teacher.

#### Q Have you ever had bad teachers before?

*A*: Oh, yeah, tons of them. Perhaps it's an exaggeration to say tons, but I've really had a few. When I was in primary school, my math teacher was extremely dull, but more importantly, whenever I made a mistake or anything, he would use a stick to hit me in the butt. I hated him.

#### 词汇 Key Words

- good-looking [gud"lukin] adj. 长得好看的 gorgeous = pretty = beautiful 漂亮的
- attract [ə'trækt] v. 吸引
   be attractive 有吸引力的
   be attracted by sb. 被某人吸引
   sth. is appealing/absorbing/fascinating/ gripping (书、电影、节目等) 有吸引力
- pay attention 集中注意力
   focus on sth. = concentrate on sth. 关注……;
   集中注意力于……

be absent-minded 心不在焉的

sth.)

● lead to sth. 造成; 引起……(=give rise to



 academic performance 学习成绩; 学术 成就

• a sense of humour 幽默感

a good/keen sense of humour 很强的幽默感

funny=hilarious=hysterical 幽默的, 搞 笑的

crack up 发笑

crack sb. up 令某人发笑

laugh my head off 开怀大笑

double over with laughter 大笑不止

● knowledgeable ['nplɪdʒəbl] *adj.* 知识丰富的(=well-read)

● a walking encyclopedia 无所不知的人(行 走的百科全书)

look up to sb. 尊敬某人(=respect sb.)

● sth. is too much responsibility 做……责任 重大

 so heavy a burden on me 对我来说是 很重大的责任

be capable of doing sth. 有能力做某事
 (= be able to do sth.)

an exaggeration 夸张; 言过其实

● a few 一些

 dull [dʌl] adj. 无聊的 (= boring = mindnumbing = a drag)

hit me in the butt 打我屁股

## 🗣 Sunshine

Q Do you like sunny days?

*A:* Yeah, I do. Sunny weather is my favourite. In fact, I believe most people dig sunny days, right? Whenever it's beautiful out there, I just naturally feel delighted.

**Q** Do you want to go to a place with a lot of sunshine in the future?

A: Yeah, sure. Like I said, I'm crazy about sunny days and it's natural that I adore places with a lot of sunshine too. I've always longed to go to Florida where it's sunny most of the time. I believe I'll be over the moon when I finally get a chance to go.

Q Are there any technologies with sun-nowadays?

A: Yes, I'm sure there are many. Solar energy is cheap and sustainable, and so a lot of major tech companies are seeking to invent things with the help of it. I'm not certain if I'm correct, but I think many companies around the world are trying to create solar energy vehicles. People can just drive their cars and if it's sunny, the cars get more and more energy. It would be fantastic if I had a car like that.

#### 词汇 Key Words

• sunny days 晴天

on sunny days 在晴天(注意介词 on 的用 法, 如: on a sunny day、on my birthday、 on Valentine's Day 等)

 delighted [dr'laɪtɪd] adj. 开心的 (=happy= in a good mood)

> over the moon = on cloud nine = tickled pink 超级开心的



● long to do sth. 渴望做某事 (= want to do sth. = dream of doing sth. = have an itch to do sth.)

- solar energy 太阳能
- sustainable [sə'steɪnəbl] adj. 可持续的 sustainable development 可持续发展

## Rainy days

environmentally friendly 环境友好型 green 环保的,保护环境的 lead a green lifestyle 过环保的生活

- major tech company 大科技公司
- seek to do sth. 试图做某事

#### Does it rain much in China?

*A:* Well, it rains very often in summertime. In July and August, it pours quite frequently and sometimes, if it doesn't rain heavily, it spits. All in all, we do get a lot of rain in the summer.

#### **(2)** Is there any part of China where it doesn't rain much?

*A:* Yeah, it doesn't rain much in Inner Mongolia. I lived there for several months a few years ago and it hardly ever rained that summer. In Beijing, where I come from, it rains quite a lot in the summer and we even have downpours occasionally. Compared with Beijing, Inner Mongolia is a rather dry place.

② In what month does it rain most in your hometown? 上个问题的答案可以回答这道题。

🔇 Can you remember any time when it rained particularly heavily in your hometown?

*A:* Yeah, for sure. It was several years ago, on July 21st, if I remember correctly. It was the heaviest rainfall I've ever seen. It rained strongly for about 5 hours nonstop and in the end, the whole city was flooding. I saw on the news that some people even drowned in the rain. It was a nightmare.

#### 词汇 Key Words

- frequently ['fri:kwentlɪ] adv. 频繁地
   occasionally = from time to time 偶尔
- rain heavily/strongly 下大雨 get a lot of rain 经常下雨 rainfall 降雨 it pours 下大雨 a downpour 大雨 it spits 下小雨 it's drizzling 下小雨

all in all 总而言之



 if I remember correctly 如果我没记错的话 (=if my memory serves me correctly = if memory serves)

nonstop [npn'stop] adv. 不停地
 5 hours in a row 连续五小时

- be flooding 被淹没
- drown [draun] v. 淹死
- a nightmare 噩梦

## **Politeness**

**Q** Who taught you to be polite?

A: Oh, um, there must have been a lot of people who taught me how to be polite when I was growing up. If memory serves, when I was 4 or 5 years old, my mom told me that whenever we were having a meal, we shouldn't start eating until the elderly people began to eat. I'm sorry, it's been a long time, so my memory's pretty vague now.

Q How do Chinese people show politeness?

A: Well, we show our politeness in myriad ways, including saying "thank you" to others, giving seats to the elderly on the subway or the bus, saying  $\infty$  instead of  $\infty$  when we say "you" in Chinese. In fact, this is particularly important where I come from. I remember being told off by my mom after not saying  $\infty$  to one of my uncles.

#### **(Q)** What rules of politeness have changed in China?

A: Um, that's a tricky one. It's really tough to think of something in a fraction of the time. Well, um, sorry, really nothing comes to mind. I suppose most of the things have just remained more or less the same today compared to what they were like in the past.

#### 词汇 Key Words

- polite [pə'lart] adj. 礼貌的(=well-mannered)
   respectful 尊敬的,表示敬意的
  - ill-mannered 不礼貌的

● if memory serves 如果我没记错的话 (= if I remember correctly)

- my memory's a bit vague/sketchy 我的记忆 有点模糊了
- I have a memory like a sieve 我的记忆力很差
- it's been a long time 已经好久了
- particularly important 尤其重要
- tell sb. off 呵斥 / 斥责某人 (尤其是孩子)
- tricky ['trɪkɪ] adj. 困难的(=tough=difficult)



- in a fraction of the time 在很短的时间内
- come to mind 被想到
- more or less 差不多
- in the past 在过去 (= before)

## Mirrors

Q How often do you look in the mirror every day?

*A:* Well, I do it multiple times. Every morning and every evening, when I wash my face and brush my teeth, I'm standing in front of a mirror, that's for sure. And also, during the day, every once in a while, I pull out my small mirror and see if I look good.

#### Q Have you ever bought mirrors?

A: Yeah, I have. In fact, the last time I bought a mirror was just last week. My mom and I went to IKEA to buy a mirror and other pieces of furniture to refurbish our apartment. The mirror we bought was dirt-cheap. It only cost us 80 yuan or something.

#### Would you use mirrors to decorate rooms?

A: Um, I'm not sure what you mean...If there's a mirror that looks good and suits my room, it can absolutely be seen as a decoration. But I don't suppose I would put several or even many mirrors in a place just to make it look better.

词汇 Key Words

 multiple ['mʌltɪpl] adj. 很多 (= many = tons of = loads of)

- for sure 肯定;毫无疑问地
- (every) once in a while 偶尔
- pull out 掏出来
- IKEA 宜家
- a piece of furniture 一件家具
   a set of furniture 一套家具
   furniture 家具 (不可数名词)

- refurbish [.ri:'f3:bɪ] ν. 重新装修
- dirt-cheap ['dɜ:t'tʃi:p] adj. 非常便宜的
   pricey = costly = expensive = cost a lot of
   dough = cost an arm and a leg 非常昂贵的
- suit sth. 适合……

● be seen as 被看作, 被当作(=be considered as)

### **News**

Q Do you like reading newspapers?

A: It's hard to say. I'm not sure if the BBC is considered a newspaper but I do like to read it on a daily basis. It's my main source of information.

#### Q Do you like to get news from the Internet or from newspapers?

*A*: I always read the BBC, which I think is kind of like the Internet, but what I do actually is that I have installed an app on my phone, the BBC app. I use it to read news pretty much every day and that allows me to get updated on what's going on in the world. I hardly ever read newspapers.

#### **Q** What kind of news do you like to read or watch?

A: My preference is to read entertainment and sports news, because they appeal to me more. They are lighthearted, not very serious. They are not like politics or scientific news, which require that I read those articles really carefully to get to know what is really going on. When I read a news article about a celebrity, an actor, a singer or a soccer star, I just feel that it's a good way for me to unwind.

#### Do you like domestic news or international news?

A: I read both. Maybe domestic news attracts me more because it's more relevant. I get a better understanding of what is happening around me. For example, perhaps the news says that housing prices have soared recently and I know it's not the time for me to buy an apartment. Oh, as a matter of fact, even if the prices are not sky-high, I still can't afford to buy an apartment...

词汇 Key Words

be considered (to be) 被认为是……(=be regarded as = be seen as)

- on a daily basis 每天 (= every day)
- my main source of information 我的主要 信息来源
  - install an app 安装一个应用
- allow me to do sth. 使我能够做某事(=
   enable me to do sth.)
  - get updated on sth. 了解……的最新消息

 what is going on in the world 世界上正在 发生什么 (= what is happening in the world)

- preference ['prefrans] n. 偏好, 偏爱
- appeal to me 吸引我 (= attract me)

● lighthearted ['laɪt'hɑ:tɪd] *adj.* 轻松的, 不严肃的

serious 严肃的

- unwind [,ʌn'waɪnd] v. 放松 (= relax = reduce stress = loosen up)
  - relevant ['reləvənt] adj. 相关的
  - soar [so:(r)] v. 高涨
  - sky-high ['skaɪ'haɪ] adj. 极高的



## Letters or emails

**(Q)** Do you write many letters or emails? Do you prefer to write letters by hand or using a computer?

A: Well, I like writing emails better because obviously, it's much faster and a lot more convenient. I don't have to buy any envelopes or stamps and then run to a post office to mail anything. From time to time, I write an email to one of my teachers about my homework and then the teacher writes back to me. I think it's very convenient.

#### Q Who do you usually write to?

A: Well, like I said, I write emails to my teachers every once in a while, but in addition to them, I sometimes write to an American friend of mine who has been helping me with my English. In fact, we have Skype lessons with each other on a weekly basis and because of that, we need to email each other from time to time to set times for our lessons.

#### What are the differences between writing a letter and writing an email?

A: There are tons of differences, but the only one I can think of now is that emails are much faster than letters. If you want to write a letter to a friend in another part of the country or even the world, it takes days for the letter to arrive, or even a month sometimes. However, if you write an email, after writing everything, you just click "send", and the person you're writing to can receive this email instantly, which is very fast and convenient.

#### 词汇 Key Words

- much faster 快很多 (= a lot faster)
   a lot more convenient = much more convenient
   方便很多
- envelope ['envələup] n. 信封 stamp 邮票
  - postcard 明信片
- write back to me 给我回信
   call me back 给我回电话
- (every) once in a while 偶尔,有时 (= from time to time = occasionally)



- in addition to 除了……之外
   "除此之外"连接词: in addition = additionally = plus = on top of that = furthermore
- set times 定时间

### Magazine

#### Q Do you read magazines?

A: Um, well, I hardly ever read magazines because I mainly get information on social media, Weibo, in particular, which is the Chinese equivalent of Twitter. This is my main source of information because it's much easier and way more convenient to learn what's going on in the world on it. Plus, it's free of charge.

#### Did you read magazines when you were young?

*A:* Yeah, I did. Before the invention of social media, I was a huge fan of magazines, particularly one called Reader. This used to be very popular among teenagers and young adults about 10 years ago. I would go to the newsstand near my home and buy it every week because it was issued weekly. I really
liked this magazine back then because there were so many kinds of articles in it, not just about sports, but also entertainment, politics and so on. I could read anything in this one single magazine.

Q Do younger people or older people prefer to read magazines?

A: I want to say neither of them like to read magazines now because as for young people, we prefer to read things on social networking sites and elderly people are more into reading newspapers. I honestly have no idea why, but it just seems like every time you see an old person read something, they're very likely to be reading a newspaper.

#### What kinds of magazines are popular in your country?

A: Um, I don't suppose magazines are any different from newspapers. The most popular kinds of magazines should be entertainment, sports, and current affairs. Out of these, perhaps the most well-liked type is entertainment coz everybody likes to read about celebrities and later gossip about them with friends.

词汇 Key Words

- hardly ever 很少 (= seldom)
  - do sth. once in a blue moon 很少,几乎不……
- social media 社交媒体
  - social networking site 社交网站

the Chinese equivalent of sth. 中国的……

- much more 多了(=way more = a lot more)
- learn what's going on in the world 了解世 界上正在发生什么

have the world at m∮ fingertips 了解世界的 最新消息

- free of charge 免费的
- particularly [pə'tıkjələlɪ] n. 尤其(=especially)
- be popular among / with... 在……中很流行 popular = well-liked 流行的
- newsstand ['nju:zstænd] n. 报刊亭

be issued (报刊、杂志) 出版,发行
 weekly 每周一次

● be into sth. 喜欢…… (=be fond of sth. = like sth.)

● have no idea 不知道;不了解(=don't know=have no clue)

 an old person...they 通常在不知道或 没有明确表达性别的情况下,一个人也可以被 称作 they

- be likely to do sth. 可能做某事
- current affairs 时事
- celebrity [sə'lebrətɪ] n. 名人 gossip about sb. 聊某人的八卦 gossipy 爱聊八卦的

# J Sleep

#### Q How many hours do you sleep every day?

A: Most of the time, I hit the sack around 11.30 and um, I am a morning lark, so usually I just get out of bed at 6.30. That makes it seven hours every day.

100

#### Q Is it necessary to take a nap every day?

A: It really depends on the person. For me, I don't suppose it is that necessary because I tend to be a rather energetic person and I have a lot of energy every single day. I hardly ever have forty winks after lunch or something like that. But I know that a lot of other people are completely different. If they don't take a power nap at noon, they just find it really hard to function in the afternoon. They just feel really groggy. For those people, it's quite important.

# **Q** Do old people sleep a lot?

A: Off the top of my head, I'd say that they do. Although they go to bed really early every night, they get up pretty early. They take some naps during the day, three or even four hours. So when everything is added up, I believe old people sleep a great amount.

#### 🔇 Do you always have a good sleep?

A: I always have a very good sleep. When I sleep, I sleep like a baby, I never toss and turn and I never have a nightmare. I do feel I'm pretty fortunate.

# 词汇 Key Words

 hit the sack 上床睡觉 (= hit the hay = go to bed = go to sleep)

● a morning lark 喜欢早起的人 (= a morning person)

a night owl 夜猫子

stay up late = burn the midnight oil 熬夜(到 很晚)

necessary 非常重要的,必要的(=very important = crucial = vital)

 energetic [,enə'dʒetɪk] *adj.* 精力充沛的 full of beans 精力充沛的

 take a nap 小憩一会,小睡一会(=have forty winks = take a power nap) groggy ['grogɪ] adj. 困倦的 (= drowsy
 = sleepy)

- get up 起床 (= get out of bed)
   drag oneself out of bed 挣扎着起床
- sleep like a baby 睡得很好
- toss and turn 辗转反侧
- nightmare ['naɪt,meə] n. 噩梦
- fortunate ['fo:tfənət] adj. 幸运的 (= lucky) unfortunate = unlucky 不幸运的

# 🛡 Maps

# Do you often use maps?

*A:* Yeah, I do. I don't have a good sense of direction so I always have to find my bearings. For instance, whenever I go abroad, I have to hire a car, and because I've never been there before, I usually have to try to find my way, and then, I will have to use a map.

### **Q** Who taught you to use a map?

A: We had geography class in middle school. I vaguely remember that our geography teacher taught us something about using maps. It's been so long and my memory is a little sketchy.

# Q Have you asked someone for directions?

A: All the time. When I lose my way, I just try to find my bearings on a map on my phone. Sometimes, if there is someone near me, I will just go up to them and ask them how I can get to my destination. I've done that multiple times.

# • When was the first time you used a map?

A: I don't remember. Your questions are all asking me about my past. It must have been 10 or 15 years ago. I don't know, I'm so sorry.

词汇 Key Words

• a good/bad sense of direction 好 / 坏的方

● I vaguely remember 我模糊地记得 my memory is a little vague = my memory is a little sketchy 我的记忆有点模糊了 it's been so long = it's been a long time = it's been ages 已经很久了,已经好多年了

```
    multiple ['mʌltɪpl] adj. 很多(=many

= tons of)
```

#### 向感

can't find my way 找不到路

can't find my bearings 找不到自己的位置

 go abroad 出国(= go overseas) study abroad = study overseas 留学

# Jewelry

Q How often do you wear jewelry?

A: Well, I guess the only piece of jewelry on me is a ring that my boyfriend gave me on my last birthday. It's not a wedding or engagement ring or anything ... and I wear it every day, wherever I go.

• What's your attitude towards jewelry?

A: Um, my attitude towards jewelry? Well, I don't know where to begin... As for me, I don't suppose I'm the type of person that will wear a lot of jewelry coz, for one, it's heavy, right? Hahaha. Another reason is my preference is to have a minimalist look, you know, the simpler, the better. Honestly, I don't see it as beautiful when someone wears too much jewelry.

# What kind of jewelry do you like to buy?

### 这个答案和上面的答案正好相反。

A: Oh, I'm into quite a few things actually, including pendants, studs, rings and so on. I have a big number of rings in my home. In fact, whenever I go to a new place, I like to check out if they have some specially-designed rings there.

### Why do so many people choose to buy expensive jewelry?

A: Well, the only reason that comes to mind is that it's a way for them to show off their social status or wealth. In fact, it's not just expensive jewelry, but anything that costs a lot of dough, from cars, to bags, to pricey clothing too. There's a friend of mine who wears a lot of jewelry and she goes around telling people where she got them and how much she paid for them. As a matter of fact, I don't really think what she wears are pretty at all, but she takes a lot of pride in them.

### 词汇 Key Words

- jewelry ['dʒu:əlrɪ] n. 珠宝;首饰(不可数名词)
  - a piece of jewelry 一件首饰 pendant 项链坠饰 stud 耳钉

pin 胸针

bangle 手镯

bracelet 手链 earrings 耳环

- ring [rɪŋ] n. 戒指
- wedding ring 结婚戒指
   engagement ring 订婚戒指
- for one 首先,第一
   for another 其次,第二
- preference ['prefrans] n. 偏好, 喜好
- minimalist ['mɪnɪməlɪst] adj. 简约的 the simpler, the better 越简单越好

● see/consider sth. to be/as... 把……看作 / 当作……

 I'm quite into 我很喜欢(=I really like=I have a penchant for = I'm a huge fan of)

• check out 看看……



- specially-designed 特别设计的
- show off 炫耀
- social status 社会地位

wealth 财富

be rich = be wealthy = be affluent = be well-heeled 富有的

expensive [ɪk'spensɪv] adj. 昂贵的(=
 pricey = costly = cost a lot of dough)

pretty ['prɪtɪ] adj. 漂亮的 (= beautiful = gorgeous)

● take a lot of pride in sth. 为……感到很 骄傲

# Housework

#### Do you do housework?

A: Yes, I do. In fact, I have no choice but to do housework coz I live alone-there's no one to help

me with all the chores. Um, I take out the trash every morning and do the dishes in the evening. I also sweep and vacuum the floor roughly three times a week. I'm not a fan of doing household chores, but I still have to do them.

#### Q What kinds of housework do you dislike doing?

*A*: Well, I loathe everything because it's both physically demanding and time-consuming. I suppose what I dislike the most should be washing the clothes. I don't really enjoy it when I dip my hands in cold water, and then having to rinse off all the soap.

#### Did you help your parents do housework when you were young?

*A:* Um, yeah I did. As a matter of fact, I was quite into doing it when I was growing up coz my parents would pay me for the things I did. For example, if I swept the floor, they would give me 1 yuan and if I did the dishes for the whole family, I would earn 3 yuan, which was a big sum of money for me. I would then run to buy my favourite snacks.

Q Do you think men and women should share housework?

A: Yeah, totally. I believe it's extremely important that men and women share household chores because this is good for their relationship I think. When they're doing housework, it's some quality time that they spend together. Personally, I share everything with my wife. She cooks and I do the dishes; she sweeps the floor and I take out the trash. So we've never gotten in a big fight before over housework and this really helps our relationship.

词汇 Key Words

● do housework 做家务 [= do (household) chores]

help around the house 帮忙做家务

sweep the floor 扫地

mop the floor 拖地

vacuum the floor 用吸尘器清扫地面

- take out the trash 倒垃圾
- make the bed 整理床铺

do/wash the dishes 刷盘洗碗

● I'm not a fan of sth. 我不喜欢……(=I don't

like = sth. doesn't appeal to me)

loathe [ləuð] v. 厌恶,非常讨厌(=detest
 = dislike very much)

 physically demanding 耗费体力的(= exhausting = very tiring) exhausted = worn-out = dead-beat = very tired 感到非常疲倦的

● time-consuming [taɪm kən'sju:mɪŋ] adj. 耗费很多时间的

> it takes...to do sth. 花费(多长时间)来做 某事

dip my hands into cold water 把手浸在
 冷水里

rinse off the soap 冲洗掉香皂 / 肥皂沫

as a matter of fact 事实上 (= in fact = actually)

- pay me 付给我钱
- a big sum of money 很大一笔钱

第4章 口语素材大全

totally ['təʊtəlɪ] adv. 完全地 (= absolutely = definitely)

extremely important 非常重要的 (= vital = crucial = necessary = essential)

quality time 宝贵时光
 me-time 一个人待着的时间

# 🖣 History

# Do you like history?

A: Yeah, I have a penchant for learning history. I often go to the library and check out some history books and then read them in the cafe near my dorm, which I think is super enjoyable.

Q Do you think history is important?

A: Yeah, absolutely. Learning history is of great importance. For starters, it allows people to become more intelligent because we can learn lessons from the past. You know, history always repeats itself, so whatever happened before could also happen tomorrow and learning history helps us better solve future problems. On top of that, it provides people with good talking points coz history is filled with stories, right? If you like to learn history, you can talk about whatever you've learned with your friends or colleagues and this helps with your conversations.

# Q Do you like to watch programmes on TV about history?

A: No, I'm not a fan of that coz I believe that the history I learn in books is more credible. Things that show on TV are usually tweaked in order to be more entertaining so that more people will watch them.

#### What historical event do you find most interesting?

*A:* Oh, my god, this is super tough for me in English. Off the top of my head, I like to read about the Renaissance because there were so many talented people back then—writers, artists, musicians, scientists and so forth. I even want to travel back in time to that period to meet those people.

105

### 词汇 Key Words

 have a penchant for 非常喜欢(=have a passion for=be a huge fan of=be crazy about= like very much)

- check out a book 去图书馆借书
- enjoyable [ɪn'dʒɔɪəbl] *adj.* 令人愉快的,令 人享受的 ( = pleasurable)



a good opportunity to bond = a good bonding opportunity 一个促进感情的好 机会

bring us closer together 拉近我们的距离

• get in a big fight (和某人) 吵架

be of great importance 非常重要的 (= be vital = be crucial = be very important)

• it allows sb. to do sth. 使某人能够做某事 (=it enables sb. to do sth.)

intelligent [ɪn'telɪdʒənt] adj. 聪明的 (= smart
 = wise)

knowledgeable = well-read (['wel'red]) 知识 渊博的

well-spoken = articulate 能言善辩的,口才 好的

● learn lessons from the past 从过去学习、 汲取知识

● provide sb. with sth. 给某人提供某物(注 意用 with)

talking points 谈资

be filled with 充满……(= be full of)

• credible ['kredəbl] adj. 可信的 (= believable)

incredible = unbelievable 难以置信的; 非常棒的

● tweak sth. 稍微调整……

• in order to 为了

● entertaining [,entə'teɪnɪŋ] *adj.* 有娱乐 性的

• so that 以便

● the Renaissance 文艺复兴

 talented ['tæləntɪd] adj. 有才华的 multi-talented 多才多艺的

a renaissance man 多才多艺的人;什么 都精通的人

genius 天才

travel back in time 时光穿梭

# Daily routine

What time of the day do you like the best?

A: Um, I suppose it would be the morning, I mean between 6 and 7. I always drag myself out of bed at 6 and then go to nuke my breakfast and make myself a cup of coffee. Coffee is my favourite drink—it's a great pick-me-up and I suppose I like the morning partly because of coffee. Another reason is that it's super peaceful in the morning when everyone else is still asleep. There's no distraction and I can always get a lot of things done in an efficient way.

**(Q)** What's your favourite daily routine?

A: Well, um, this is hard to describe...Well, I like to get up early so that my day is prolonged, I mean, longer than others' days. During the day...well, I just do whatever I'm supposed to do—study and eat and hang out with friends. I quite enjoy it when I can spend my evenings doing some reading coz it's a great stress-buster and I get to make myself better in this way.

What's the busiest part of the day for you?

A: Well, it really depends. On most days, I don't usually feel very busy-I have very little on my

106

plate. However, before mid-terms and finals, I can be super swamped and there's no part of the day which is busier than the rest—I have my hands full all day long.

What's the difference between your daily routine now and that when you were a teenager?

*A:* Um, the only difference that comes to mind is that I hit the sack much earlier than when I was a teenager because I'm more health-conscious now and also I don't have as much homework as before. When I was in high school, we got tons of homework to do every single day and I always had to burn the midnight oil.

词汇 Key Words

● nuke sth. 用微波炉加热某物 (= heat sth. in the microwave)

 make myself a cup of coffee 做一杯咖啡 a great pick-me-up 一种很棒的提神的东西 wake up 醒来

be bleary-eyed 因困倦而视线模糊的

latte 拿铁咖啡

Americano 美式咖啡

Cappuccino 卡布奇诺咖啡

- peaceful ['pi:sfl] adj. 安静的 (=quiet=tranquil)
- be asleep 睡着的

no distraction 没有干扰

get a lot of things done 做完很多事

efficient 有效率的

effective 有效果的

in a...way 以一种……的方式

● prolong sth. 延长…… ( = make sth. last longer)

- be supposed to 应该
- stress-buster 帮人减压的事物
- get to do sth. 得以,能够做某事

have a lot on my plate 非常忙碌 (= have my hands full = be swamped = be very busy)

107



● mid-terms 期中考试

finals 期末考试

sth. is approaching = sth. is coming up = sth. is around the corner 某事即将来临

• the rest 剩余的……

• all day long 一整天 all night long 一整晚

the whole day = the entire day 一整天

 the only...that comes to mind 我唯一 能想到的……是

- be health-conscious 注意健康的
- burn the midnight oil 熬夜到很晚 (= stay up late)

# 🛡 Birthday

# Q How did you celebrate your last birthday?

*A:* Um, let me think. Well, in fact, I just celebrated it with my girlfriend/boyfriend. We went out for dinner, a candle-lit dinner actually, so it was pretty romantic. And while we were eating, my girlfriend/boyfriend gave me a present, which was a 5,000-yuan watch/bag. I was taken aback because to us, that was a lot of money. But of course, I was tickled pink.

#### Do you think it's important for people to celebrate birthdays?

A: Yeah, definitely. In my opinion, it's extremely important for people to celebrate their birthdays because it's primarily a chance for them to get together with their family members and friends to have fun together. If you throw a birthday party, at home or in a restaurant, you will invite your friends and they will bring you presents. Then, at the party, you will enjoy a big meal together, chat and laugh with each other, which I think is super enjoyable. So yeah, like I said, celebrating a birthday is absolutely a good opportunity for people to have a great time.

#### Do people in China do anything special to celebrate birthdays?

A: Well, in fact, generally speaking, the way we celebrate birthdays now in most parts of China are pretty similar to any other country. I guess it's due to globalisation—invasion of Hollywood movies and western culture and stuff like that. But, something that only we do should be...um, some people still eat a bowl of longevity noodles on their birthdays to wish for a long life ahead. But I haven't done it in a long time.

# Q Are birthdays more important for children or for adults?

A: Well, in my opinion, birthdays are absolutely more important for kids because I don't suppose I, as well as many of my friends, who are all adults of course, look forward to birthdays as much as children. Perhaps it's because children all want to grow up, whereas we want to stay young. Well, of course, the key reason here is that kids look forward to presents much more than we do.

108

词汇 Key Words

- go out for dinner 出去吃饭
  - a top-notch restaurant = an upscale restaurant
  - = a fancy restaurant 高档饭店
- candle-lit dinner 烛光晚餐
- be taken aback 很惊讶

be surprised = be astonished 吃惊的



 be tickled-pink 非常开心 (= be over the moon = be on cloud nine = be very happy)

- primarily [prar'merəlɪ] *adv.* 主要地; 根本 地
  - have a lot of fun 玩得很开心 (= have a great time = have a blast = have a ball = have a whale of a time)
  - throw a birthday party 举办生日派对
- chat [tʃæt] ν. 闲聊 (= chew the fat = shoot the breeze)
  - catch up with sb. 和某人叙旧

- the way ····· 的方式
- be pretty similar to sth. 和……很类似

( = be not that different from sth.)

- due to 由于 (= because of)
- globalisation [,gləubəlar'zeɪʃn] n. 全球化
   a globalised world 全球化的世界
- invasion [In'veI3n] n. 入侵
- longevity noodles 长寿面
- look forward to sth. 期待, 向往

x

- stay young 保持年轻
- key [ki:] adj. 关键的

# Advertisements

#### Q Are there many advertisements in your country?

A: Yes, absolutely. They're everywhere. I mean, we are just bombarded by different kinds of advertisements every day. No matter where you go in our country, you can see different ads. For instance, when you're surfing the Internet, watching TV or something like that, you see loads of ads.

#### **(Q)** Why do you think there are so many advertisements now?

A: Well, it's just because every company needs to make profits and by putting ads everywhere, they can make more potential customers know the existence of their products or services and they're more likely to go and buy those things. Take for example Apple. Whenever a new iPhone comes out, you can see Apple ads in all sorts of places—on TV, on the Internet, in shopping malls and so on. Apple is good at advertising and that's one reason why they're so successful now.

#### **Q** How do you feel about advertisements?

A: Well, of course, there are good points and bad points about them. As for the good points, some ads are very interesting and super fascinating, especially some from the United States and from Thailand. They can be touching, creative, imaginative and so on, but the majority of Chinese ads just tend to be really boring. On the other hand, a lot of adverts are incredibly annoying. They take up a lot of time while you're watching TV. You may be watching a captivating show now, and then, all of a sudden, there is an ad, and that just really drives you up the wall.

109

# 词汇 Key Words

- be bombarded by sth. 面对大量的……
- advertisement [əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt] n. 广告 (=advert=ad)

advertising 广告业; 做广告(行为)

 no matter where 无论何地(=wherever)
 no matter when = whenever 无论何时

no matter who = whoever 无论谁 no matter what = whatever 无论什么

 loads of 很多 (=tons of=myriad=a large number of = a lot of)

- make profits 盈利 (= make a profit)
   earn money = make money 赚钱
   be in the black 处于盈利状态
   be in the red 处于亏损状态
- potential customers 潜在的顾客
- existence [ɪg'zɪstəns] n. 存在
  - exist 存在

sth. is available on the market 市场上有某种 产品

make customers aware of the availability of a product 让顾客知道一种产品的存在

come out 出版;发行;上市(=be released)

● be good at 擅长;非常了解(=be an expert in/on/at)

• fascinating ['fæsɪnertɪŋ] adj. 精彩的, 吸

引人的 (= captivating = gripping = absorbing) catch sb.'s attention = capture sb.'s attention

抓住某人的注意力

- touching ['tʌtʃɪŋ] adj. 感人的 (= moving)
   creative = innovative 有创造力的
- imaginative 有想象力的
- the majority of 大多数的 (= most of)

incredibly [In'kredəblɪ] adv. 非常地(=
 extremely = very)

- annoying [ə'nɔɪɪŋ] adj. 恼人的,讨厌的 make sb. annoyed 使某人烦恼 drive sb. up the wall 让某人心烦意乱 get under sb.'s skin 令某人生气
- take up a lot of time 占用很多时间 sth. is a bore = sth. is super boring 很无聊
- all of a sudden 突然 (= suddenly)

# Time management

I How do you manage your time?

*A:* Um, well, this question is tricky...In fact, I don't really manage it. I just do every single task that I'm given. Oh, I guess I should say the best way to manage time is just not to procrastinate. Whenever you have something at hand, do it and then move on to the next task.

🔇 Do you think young people manage their time in the same way as old people?

A: Um, probably not. I believe young people generally use some modern electronic devices to manage their time, like um...for example, they might make a to-do list on their phones or tablets and then constantly check that list to see what needs to be done and when. By comparison, elderly people might just write things down on a piece of paper or notebook simply because the majority of them are not quite familiar with modern technology. My granddad, for example, has never successfully learned how to use a smartphone and he has a small notebook within his reach all the time.

110

# Q Are you ever late for anything?

*A:* Yeah, sure. By and large, I'm a very punctual person, which means, I'm seldom late for things. But I can still remember a few times when I was late to something. For instance, last month, I was caught up in traffic one day and it took me much longer to get to work, so I was 15 minutes late.

#### What excuses do you use when you are late?

A: Excuses? Well, I don't really come up with any excuses. I mean, if I'm late, I just tell whoever I'm meeting the true reason why I'm late. I guess it's because I'm on time in most cases that my colleagues and friends will usually forgive me when I'm a little late occasionally.

#### 词汇 Key Words

- tricky ['trɪkɪ] adj. 困难的 (= tough = hard)
   sth. is no picnic = sth. is difficult 某事很难
   sth. is a walk in the park = sth. is child's play
   = sth. is easy 某事很简单
- procrastinate [prəʊ'kræstɪneɪt] ν. 拖延 procrastination 拖延; 拖延症
  - put sth. off = delay (doing) sth. 推迟做某事
- at hand 在手边;即将到来
- move on to sth. 开始做另外一件事
- generally ['dʒenrəlɪ] *adv.* 总的来说 (=by and large)

● electronic device 电子产品 ( = electronic item = electronic product)

- a to-do list 待办事项列表
- tablet ['tæblət] n. 平板电脑
   laptop 笔记本电脑
- constantly ['konstəntlɪ] adv. 不断地
- be familiar with 熟悉
  - be no stranger to 对……习惯;对……熟悉 be a stranger to 对……不习惯;对……不熟 悉
- within his reach 在他旁边 / 附近

- punctual ['pʌŋktʃuəl] adj. 准时的 on time 准时 in time 及时 ¥
- be late to/for 迟到
- be running late 要迟到了
- excuse [ɪk'skju:s] n. 借口 inexcusable 不可原谅的
- come up with 想出 ( = think of) make sth. up 编造
- forgive me 原谅我
- occasionally [ə'keɪʒnəlɪ] adv. 偶尔





# y Boating

#### Q Have you ever travelled by boat?

A: Yes, I have. Several years ago, in the summer actually, I went on a cruise trip along the Yangtze River with a few of my friends. The whole trip lasted about a week, and by and large, it was quite enjoyable. We had a whale of a time.

# Q Do you like boating?

A: Well, it's hard to say. Um, I don't have any special feelings for boating. It's indeed pretty relaxing and pleasurable when I row a boat on a lake with a few friends or with my folks, but I don't suppose boating is necessary in my life. I can live without it.

#### **(Q)** Would you like to have your own boat?

A: Yeah, it would be fantastic if I had a boat of my own. First of all, it would mean that I were pretty rich and everybody wants to be wealthy, right? Plus, I could always go boating somewhere to relax and have fun. I believe it would be awesome.

#### **Q** Are boat trips popular in your country?

A: No, I don't think so, because boat trips are rather time-consuming. When we take a boat to go to another city or region, we usually need to be on it for quite a few days. So because of this, I don't suppose most people like this form of transport.

# 词汇 Key Words

- go on a trip 去旅行
- · cruise 游轮

boat 可以表示"小船,小舟",也可以泛指 任何类型的船

take a boat, take a boat trip, go on a boat trip, go somewhere by boat, row a boat (划船)

- along the Yangtze River 沿着长江
- a few of 一些 (= some of)

quite a few = many = a lot of 很多

• last [lɑːst] v. 持续

by and large 总的来说 (= on the whole = generally)

- necessary ['nesəsərɪ] adj. 必要的 a must = a necessity 必需品
- I can live without it 我没它也行



I can't live without it 我不能没有它

sth. is an essential part of my life = sth. is an indispensable part of my life = sth. is part and parcel of my life ……是我生活 中非常重要的一部分

● it would...if I could/did/were... 虚拟语气

● wealthy ['wel'θɪ] *adj.* 有钱的,富裕的(= ● form of transport 交通方式(=mode of transport)

● time-consuming 耗费时间的

# Computer and Internet

Q How often do you use the computer/Internet? Do you use the Internet very much?

*A:* Yeah, I do. The Internet is so important to me that I can't live without it. It's because I use it to do practically everything—working, relaxing and keeping in touch with friends. As for relaxing, I watch movies, stream music and play games online. So I'd say the Internet is my main source of income and form of relaxation. It's an indispensable part of my life.

**(Q)** What do you usually use your computer for? What kinds of computers are popular in China?

A: What kinds of computers? Um, I'm not sure how to answer this question coz I feel like there's only one kind of computer, right? Oh, yeah, of course, there are desktop computers, laptop computers and also tablets, if they're regarded as computers too. I suppose the most popular should be laptops coz they're super portable and we can use them anywhere.

When was the first time you used the Internet? Who taught you how to use a computer?

A: Well, it must have been my dad when I was 12 or 13 years old. I remember one day, I saw that my dad was playing a game on his computer and I pestered him to teach me. He was pretty reluctant at first, but at last, he gave in and taught me. That game was good fun and um...yeah, that was the first time I used the Internet.

#### Q Do you think the computer has changed your life a lot?

*A:* Yeah, absolutely. I mean, not only me, but everybody. The computer has shattered everybody's old life and created a whole new world for all of us. I think it's super obvious right? Our lives depend on the computer and the Internet now. I'm convinced that it will be even more so in the future.

② Is the Internet very important to you? Do you think you could live without the Internet? 上述问题的答案可以回答这道题。

### 词汇 Key Words

- practically ['præktɪklɪ] adv. 基本上(=almost)
- keep in touch with sb. 和某人保持联系(=

stay in touch with sb.)

lose touch with sb. 和某人失去联系

get back in touch with sb. 和某人恢复联系 bring sb. closer together 拉近和某人的距离 with a click of the mouse, we can... 轻点一 下鼠标,我们就可以…… everything is just a click away 轻点一下鼠

标,一切都能得到

the whole world is at your fingertips 世界就 在你的指尖

- stream music 在网上听音乐
- online [pn'laɪn] adv. 在线地

 my main form of income 我的主要收入来源 form of relaxation 放松方式

 desktop (computer) 台式电脑 laptop (computer) 笔记本电脑 tablet 平板电脑

be regarded as 被看作(=be considered as
 = be considered to be = be seen as)

• portable ['po:təbl] adj. 便携的

• on his computer 在他的电脑上 (注意介 词 on)

• pester sb. to do sth. 缠着某人做某事

• reluctant [rɪ'lʌktənt] adj. 不情愿的

• give in 妥协

 sth. is good fun 某事 / 物很有意思, 很 有趣(=sth. is very enjoyable/pleasurable)

• shatter sth. 打破……

depend on sth. 依赖……(= rely on sth.)

I'm convinced that 我相信,我确定(=
 I believe = I bet)

even more so 更会是这样

# Teenagers

O you like to spend time with teenagers?

A: Yeah, I do. I have a 16-year-old brother and we hang out all the time. He's a big fan of computer games and he teaches me to play some once in a while. I think it's good fun spending time with him.

Q Do you know anything about the kind of fashion that teenagers like?

*A:* Well, the only thing that comes to mind is that a lot of teenagers are into baggy, loose-fitting clothing. I guess this is because hip-hop culture plays a big part in teenagers' lives and baggy clothing is an important part of this culture. My brother is a good example. He wears a big hoodie and a pair of baggy pants every day. He thinks he looks cool this way.

**(Q)** What are the best things about being a teenager?

A: Well, this is an interesting question. Um, I think being a teenager has so many plus points and one is that they can try things and don't have to worry about making mistakes. This is because they've got a long life ahead of them and failing at something at a young age doesn't affect their future much. I used to be crazy about acting and I dreamed of becoming an actor in the future. I took acting lessons for two years when I was a teenager, but that path didn't lead anywhere. Later I quit aspiring to be an actor and decided to pursue a career in fashion design. Now, I'm a pretty good designer. So, I think

my story really proves the point I made just now.

#### **Q** How do teenagers entertain themselves?

A: Oh, they do a wide range of things, like playing computer games, doing various sports and um... a lot of other things. As for sports, many teenagers dig extreme sports like skateboarding, riding a special kind of bicycle called BMX and parkour. They like these because they're young and they're drawn to things that are exhilarating and give them an adrenalin rush.

#### 词汇 Key Words

 baggy ['bægɪ] adj. 宽大的;宽松的(=loose -fitting)

- play a big part in sth. 在……中扮演重要角色
- hoodie ['hʊdɪ] n. 帽衫
  - pants 裤子
- he looks cool this way 他这样看起来很酷
- plus point 好处,利好
- ahead of sb. 在某人前面
- fail at sth. 在某方面失败
- at a young age 在年轻的时候
- that path didn't lead anywhere 那条路没 走通

● aspire to do sth. 渴望做某事 (=dream of sth.)

● pursue a career in sth. 追求一个……的事

- extreme sports 极限运动 skateboarding 滑板运动 BMX 小轮车 parkour 跑酷
- exhilarating [ɪg'zɪləreɪtɪŋ] *adj.* 刺激的, 令人激动的

give sb. an adrenalin rush 让某人肾上腺 素飙升



11

# Saving money

Q Did you save money when you were young?

A: No, I didn't. When I was growing up, whenever I wanted to buy something, I just went up to my parents and asked them for some money. They would always give me that, as long as it wasn't something very pricey.

When was the last time you saved money to buy something?

A: The last time I needed to scrimp and save in order to but something costly was actually two

months ago. I really wanted to buy the newest iPhone, the iPhone X, but it is super expensive. At that time, I didn't have enough money, so I just tightened my belt for a few months and I also borrowed some money from my parents, and then a coupe of weeks ago, I finally bought my iPhone X and I was on cloud nine when I got it.

#### Q Have you ever given money to children?

*A:* Yes, I have. In China, it's a tradition. On some special occasions, for example, during the spring festival, adults need to give money to children. We call this kind of money lucky money. Usually we put the money in a red envelope and then give it to kids.

#### **(Q)** Do you think parents should teach children to save money?

A: I guess so. It is a vital life skill for children to learn how to save up in order to buy something, because they will eventually grow up and they will have to deal with money and this kind of monetary skill is critical in everybody's life. I believe it's quite necessary that parents teach children this skill when they are at a young age.

#### 词汇 Key Words

- as long as 只要
- pricey ['praisi] adj. 昂贵的(=costly=

#### expensive)

dirt cheap 非常便宜的

- sth. costs a fortune = sth. costs a prettý penny
- = sth. costs an arm and a leg 某件东西非常 昂贵
- scrimp and save 省吃俭用来攒钱

save up 攒钱

tighten my belt 勒紧裤腰带(攒钱)

 on cloud nine 超级开心的 (= in seventh heaven = happy as a clam = overjoyed = ecstatic)

- lucky money 压岁钱
  - red envelope 红包
- vital ['vartl] adj. 非常重要的, 至关重要

的 (=crucial=critical=necessary=very important)

- deal with 处理; 应对
- monetary ['mʌnɪtrɪ] adj. 金钱的

(( Part 2 回答九大准则

- ◆ 准则 1:考官并不关心考生是否按照顺序回答一道题目的四个小点,但是我们应该使用最简单的 方法 —— 从上到下逐点回答,每个小点单独扩展。
- ◆ 准则 2: 把每一个小点看作一道 Part 1 题目,按照 Part 1 扩展方法来回答。
- ◆ 准则 3: 尽量按照顺序回答四个小点,但是如果漏掉了一个,或者因为两分钟时间到了而没说到最 后一点,并不会扣分。

116

- ◆ 准则 4:不好说的小点尽量少说,好说的小点可以充分扩展。通常,描述一件家具 / 一棵植物 / 一座建筑物等的外观较难回答,我们可以少说,花更多时间谈论与这一家具 / 植物 / 建 筑物等有关的一次经历 / 故事。
- ◆ 准则 5: 不同的题目可以进行嫁接。如 "Describe a knowledgeable person"可以与 "Describe a helpful person"进行嫁接。如果内容合适,也可以与非人物类题目进行嫁接,如 "Describe a happy experience you had in your childhood" (小时候和爷爷聊天,爷爷教了我很多知识)。
- 准则 6: 答题之前的一分钟准备时间至关重要,考生应该在这一分钟内尽量写下足够多的关键词 (尽量不要写词汇或句子)。考生在备考期间要不断练习做笔记。
- ◆ 准则 7: 回答期间,没有必要永远和考官保持眼神沟通。考生可以不时低头看自己的题目和笔记。
- ◆ 准则 8: Part 2 回答结束后,考官通常会随意问一道与考生回答内容有关的题目。该题会非常 简单,考生只需简单作答,无须扩展太多。
- ◆ 准则 9:本书中的 Part 2 素材是供大家学习逻辑思路、积累词汇句型用的,大家尽量不要直接 背诵。考官能够判断考生是否在背诵答案。

# (() Part 2 练习方法

- ◆ 方法 1: 熟练掌握"流利度"部分的逻辑扩展方法,把它运用到 Part 2 题目的小点扩展中。
- ◆方法 2: 学习本章 Part 2 例题的范例答案,积累词汇、句型、连接性表达。
- ◆ 方法 3: 听范例答案录音,改善发音;反复朗读范例答案,提高语感,并在此过程中掌握 Part 2 回答逻辑。
- ◆方法 4: 在"学为贵雅思" app 上找到当季 Part 2 题库,按照题库准备自己的答案。
- ◆方法 5: 自己的答案可以写下来,然后朗读几遍,再练习回答;也可以写下一些关键词,然后对 照关键词练习回答。练习回答时要给自己计时(Part 2 回答时间是 1~2 分钟,考生应尽 量说够 2 分钟)并录音。答完一遍之后,听自己的回答,把听到的词汇、语法、逻辑、 发音等方面的问题记下来,并思考可以把哪些词汇和句型替换成更地道的语言。再录一 遍、再听、再录、再听。每道题至少录音回答三次。

注意:我们不建议大家完全背诵范俐答案。范俐答案是笱了帮助各位考生积累语言储备、学司 逻辑思路的。大家友尽量说出自己的回答。

# (() Part 2 范例答案

Describe a time a child made you la	ugh.			
You should say:				
when it was				
who this child was				
what he or she did				
and explain why it was funny.				

Well, a couple of years ago, in February, if my memory serves me correctly, I visited my uncle's

117

# 雅思口语真经总纲

family with my parents. We went over and had dinner with them.

My uncle had a four-year-old son and everyone calls him Xiaoqiang. To be honest, I hadn't seen Xiaoqiang in a long time because I was quite <u>tied-up with work</u> and I didn't often visit my uncle's family. It was then that I realised that he was such a hilarious boy and I believe he has the <u>potential</u> to be a comedian in the future.

When we met, Xiaoqiang had just learned some English at kindergarten, so he <u>was so eager to show</u> <u>off his English</u> in front of everyone. First, he said "Good morning" to us. But actually, what he said was something like "顾得猫腻". Then, he said "I love you", but it sounded like "爱老虎油". More interestingly, he told everyone his big ambition: he wanted to find an American girlfriend in the future simply because he thought he was really good at English. He really <u>cracked everyone up</u>.

Xiaoqiang made everybody <u>burst out laughing</u> mainly because he sounded so confident while saying those English words. But actually what he said <u>didn't make any sense</u>. Plus, he was thinking about finding a girlfriend. That was the funniest I think.

# 词汇 Key Words

be tied-up with work 忙于工作 potential [pə'tenʃ] n. 潜力 be eager to do sth. 渴望…… show off sth. 炫耀…… crack sb. up 令某人发笑 burst out laughing 大笑出来 didn't make any sense 说不通; 没人能懂



Describe a person who dresses well/a person who is fashionable. You should say: who this person is how you know this person what kind of clothes this person likes to wear

and explain why you think this person dresses well.

I'm going talk about my friend, Andy. He's always <u>well-turned out</u> and to me, he's the <u>trendiest</u> guy I know.

Andy and I go way back. We used to be colleagues at a small company where I worked part-time, so it was 6 years ago already, if my memory serves me correctly. When I first met him, <u>I was quite stunned by</u> the way he dressed. He looked extremely smart and sharp.

Anyway, what kind of clothes he likes to wear...well, <u>I'm not quite sure how to put it</u>. I mean, he's always in a shirt, not a very baggy one, of course, because that would make him look fat. He usually wears <u>a pair of jeans</u>, really <u>tight</u> ones. And um, what else can I say...Well, one thing I have to mention is that he wears glasses, but only the frame. I mean, he's not <u>near-sighted</u> at all. The glasses are just an <u>accessory</u>. Of course, he wears other kinds of clothes too, but no matter what it is, he always <u>dresses pretty snappily</u>.

Andy dresses well mainly because he's *fashion-conscious*, I suppose. He reads fashion magazines and *follows the latest trends*. Plus, I guess he just *has this exquisite taste in clothing*. Maybe it's natural, I'm not quite sure.

#### 通汇 Key Words

well-turned out 衣着光鲜的 / 漂亮的 trendy ['trendɪ] adj. 时髦的 (=fashionable) go way back 认识很多年了 be stunned by 因……而吃惊 look smart and sharp 看起来很精神 I'm not sure how to put it 不知道怎么说 a pair of jeans 一条牛仔裤 tight [tart] adj. 紧的 near-sighted ['nɪərs'artɪd] adj. 近视的 accessory [ək'sesərɪ] n. 装饰品



dress snappily 穿着时髦的 fashion-conscious ['fæʃn'kɒnʃəs] *adj.* 注重 时尚的 follow the latest trends 跟随最新的潮流

have exquisite taste in sth. 在某方面有品位

Describe a person you know who can speak a foreign language. You should say: who this person is what foreign language he or she speaks how often he or she uses this language and explain how this person mastered this language.

Well, um, I'm going talk about one of my closest friends, Joey. Joey and I go way back. Actually, we were high school classmates. At that time, I *envied* him so much because his English was already awesome.

So, as I said, Joey really <u>excels at English</u>. I mean, sometimes, when you talk with him in this language, <u>you can't even tell</u> whether he's Chinese or British. Oh, <u>by the way</u>, he has an amazing British accent which makes him sound pretty sexy when he talks. Last month, for example, we went to a cafe and hung out with a bunch of friends. There was a American girl there. She asked whether Joey had lived in the UK before and she <u>was extremely shocked</u> when he said no.

### 雅思口语真经点纲

Um, how often he uses this language...well, to be honest, he doesn't use it that often. He only speaks English when he is with foreign friends. So I would say, two or three times a month.

Anyway, I asked Joey how he *mastered English* because I wanted to <u>be</u> fluent in this language too. As a matter of fact, my dream is to be <u>multilingual</u> in the future. What Joey told me was that he just watched English movies and he would always read English out loud. Plus, whenever he got a chance, he would practice speaking with a foreign friend. These things sound really simple, but just as the saying goes, "Practice makes perfect". I will *try my best* to master English too.



# 词汇 Key Words

envy sb. 羨慕…… excel at sth. 在某方面非常出色 you can't even tell... 你甚至不能辨别…… by the way 顺便说一句 be shocked 很震惊 master sth. 熟练掌握…… be fluent in... 流利使用 (某种语言) multilingual [,mʌltr'lɪŋgwəl] *adj.* 会说多种 语言的 try one's best 尽最大的努力

Describe a person who can do well at work. You should say: who this person is how you know this person what kind of work this person does and explain why this person can do his or her work well.

I'm going to talk about my friend, Yaohui. Her English name is Jenny.

We go way back. <u>To be more accurate</u>, it was about 7 years ago that we first met. I was still a high school student and I was preparing for an English-speaking contest. My cousin asked her to come and <u>give me a hand with</u> my English speech because she was really good at English. I was so stunned by how amazing her English was. I mean, I couldn't even <u>tell</u> whether she'd spend time in America before.

Anyway, what kind of work she does...well, she's an English teacher now. She's been doing it since she graduated from university. As far as I know, she's extremely popular among her students.

I think Jenny does her job really well primarily because she's a very <u>driven</u> person. I mean, she has been working incredibly hard to speak English well. She is very fluent in it now and she has this amazing American accent. In addition to this, she's a pretty positive person; I mean, she's a glass half full kind of girl, so whenever she *runs into a problem* at work, she just tries her best to think of



ways to solve it. I think this quality is pretty rare among young people now. Sometimes, I think of Jenny as my *role model*.

# 词汇 Key Words

to be more accurate 确切地说 give me a hand with... 在某方面帮助我 be stunned by... 因……吃惊 tell [tel] v. 辨别 driven ['drɪvn] adj 有上进心的 run into a problem 碰到一个问题 role model 榜样



I'm going to talk about my friend Andy. We're pretty <u>tight</u> together. I first met him on a trip to Japan because he was my tour guide. That trip was really an unforgettable experience.

As I said, Andy is a tour guide and he's been doing it for almost five years. *Over the years*, he's been to so many different places, *cosmopolitan cities* like Tokyo and New York, and *places off the beaten track* too. I think his job is pretty cool.

Why he always travels by plane...well, this is pretty obvious, right? What he mainly does is lead tourists from Beijing to other cities and even countries. *There's no doubt* plane travel is his *main form of transport*.

I asked Andy once whether he enjoyed this job. He said that he couldn't love it more. For starters, being a guide allows him to travel to all kinds of places, which is the dream of so many people. For instance, he went to Yuanyang last year where you can see <u>endless rice terraces</u>. I've been <u>longing to</u> go there for a long time because <u>the views are quite spectacular</u>. Plus, he gets to <u>get away from the hustle and bustle of city life</u> and goes to many places that are both <u>picturesque</u> and peaceful. He loves his job a lot and I really <u>envy</u> him.

#### 词汇 Key Words

tight [tart] adj. 亲近的 over the years 这些年来 cosmopolitan city 国际化大都市 place off the beaten track 偏远的地方 there's no doubt... 毫无疑问



雅思口语真经总纲

main form of transport 主要交通方式 endless rice terraces 无尽的梯田 long to do sth. 渴望做某事 spectacular views 非常美丽的风景 get away from the hustle and bustle of city life 逃离城市的喧嚣 picturesque [,pɪktʃə'resk] *adj.* 风景如画的 envy ['envɪ] w 羡慕

Describe a person whose job is important to the society. You should say: who the person is what this person does what his or her job mainly involves and explain why you think this person's job is important.

I'm going to talk about my friend Andy. We're pretty tight together. I first met him on a trip to Japan because he was my tour guide. That trip was really an unforgettable experience.

As I said, Andy is a tour guide and he's been doing it for almost five years. Over the years, he's been to so many different places, cosmopolitan cities like Tokyo and New York, and places off the beaten track too. I think his job is pretty cool, and really important. I'll talk about that in a while.

What his job mainly involves...well, what he mainly does is lead tourists from Beijing to other cities and even countries. When they're visiting a place of interest, say a *historic site* or a *futuristic* building, he's responsible for explaining everything about that particular place's history and everything. Also, he has to *take care of* other things too, like accommodation, food, transport and so on.

I think Andy's job is pretty important because in my country, people love travelling more and more and they need people like Andy to teach them and look after them. In my case, on my trip to Japan, the one I was talking about, I really learned a lot from Andy. It really helped to *expand my horizons*. Plus, travelling, in my opinion, is one of the best ways to unwind. What Andy does is make our trips more relaxing...

#### 通汇 Key Words

historic site 历史遗迹 futuristic [fju:tʃəˈrɪstɪk] adj. 未来风格 / 主义的 take care of 照顾 (=look after) expand one's horizons 开拓某人的视野



Well, I really want to work with my mom.

She is *in her 50s* but she is still pretty *energetic* every single day. I guess it's primarily because she *has a positive outlook on life*. For instance, I remember her telling me when I was a child that even though sometimes, we would *run into problems*, they were great lessons for us to learn. Plus, she is *a people person* and gets along with everyone she knows. Oh, yeah, she also likes to tell jokes. Well perhaps that's what makes her so popular among friends.

I haven't worked with my mom before, but I guess it would be fantastic to work with her after I graduate because for starters, what she does is what I'm interested in as well. She's an engineer and that's what I'm *aiming to be* in the future. Also, she's not the kind of person that always *mags* their children. Well, my dad is, so I doubt I would ever want to be at the same company as he is. I guess that's it. Hopefully, I'll be able to get a job at my mom's company in the future.

### 词汇 Key Words

in one's 50s 五十多岁 energetic [,enə'dʒetɪk] *adj.* 精力充沛的 has a positive outlook on life 生活积极乐观 run into problems 遇到问题 a people person 擅长与人打交道的人 (=a sociable person)

aim to do sth. 目标是做某事 nag sb. 念叨某人



Well, I think my dad is a good leader. You know, my dad and I are pretty close and we hang out a lot, so I guess I could say we're very good friends. My dad <u>runs a small company</u>. They <u>specialise in</u> selling children's clothes.

How other people behave towards him...well, actually, my dad is just like any other person at the company and other people don't treat him any differently. I think it's because he's a kind of person that likes to <u>keep a low profile</u> and doesn't want those working at the company to think of him as someone that they can't get along with. You know, once, I went with my dad to his office and on the way there, he met a couple of people who worked for him. <u>To my surprise</u>, they didn't say anything like "Manager Yang" or something like that. Instead, they all said "Lao Yang", which is something we say to very close friends.

In my opinion, there are a couple of reasons why he's a good leader. First of all, he's nice to everyone and <u>treats people equally</u>. Plus, he works extremely hard himself, so he <u>sets a good example</u> to others. Anther reason could be that he throws a party at the company once in a while so that everyone can have fun and <u>wind down</u> after some busy days. So, yeah, I guess these are the reasons why my dad is a great leader.

### 词汇 Key Words

run sth. 经营…… specialise in sth. 专门从事…… keep a low profile 保持低调 to my surprise 令我惊讶的是 treat people equally 平等待人 set a good example 树立好的榜样 wind down 放松

Describe a famous foreign person who you would like to meet. You should say: who this person is how you got to know this person why he or she is famous and explain why you would like to meet him or her.

Well, I would really like to meet <u>my all-time favourite actor</u>, David Schwimmer. I'm not sure whether you're familiar with his name, but you've definitely heard of the most famous <u>role</u> he's <u>play</u>ed—Ross Geller in the <u>sitcom</u>, *Friends*.

I got to know David through the show Friends. One of my friends recommended the show to me because she said it was the funniest she had ever watched. I <u>checked it out at once</u>. I found Ross so adorable. You know, he plays <u>a hopeless-romantic paleontologist</u> and he just keeps getting married and then getting a divorce. Anyway, his <u>dumbness</u> makes him so <u>lovable</u> in the show.

As for why he is famous...well, I guess <u>practically</u> everyone knows him because of Friends. I know he has also <u>starred in</u> a bunch of other sitcoms and movies, but he <u>gained worldwide</u> <u>recognition</u> for playing Ross Geller.

Um, I really wanna meet him simply because he's my favourite actor and I've been a big fan of his for a long time. I don't think anyone could ever replace him as my favourite. Also, you know, perhaps it would be great if I could learn a bit of acting from him if I were to meet David. You never know when that skill would *come in handy*.

#### 词汇 Key Words

my all-time favourite actor 我一直最喜欢的演员 play a role 扮演一个角色 sitcom ['sɪtkɒm] n. 情景喜剧 check it out at once 立刻看看 a hopeless-romantic palcontologist 对爱情抱有 美好畅想的古生物学家 dumbness ['dʌmnɪs] n. 傻 lovable ['lʌvəbl] adj. 可爱的 practically ['præktɪklɪ] adv. 实际上;几乎;简 直 (=almost) star in... 在……中担纲主演 gain worldwide recognition 获得全世界的 认可

come in handy 有用

Describe a famous person in your country that you like. You should say: who this person is how you know this person what this person is famous for and explain why you like this person.

I'm going to talk about 宁泽涛, who is a really well-known swimmer in China. By well-known, I mean, everybody knows him. If not everybody, then at least, every young girl knows this attractive champion swimmer.

I know him because two years ago, um, I remember one day, I was hanging out with a very good friend of mine in a mall and I saw his poster. When I saw his *dashing looks*, I got really attracted to him. I felt like I couldn't move my legs anymore. I asked my friend if she knew him, she said "sure" and told me his name and what he does.

What he's famous for...well, I think 宁泽涛 has <u>gained great popularity nationwide</u> over the past couple of years mainly because he's so good-looking. I mean, I'm not saying he isn't a good swimmer. Well, he is. He <u>specialises in the freestyle</u> and he's one of the best in Asia. However, he has <u>gained a large number</u> of <u>followers</u> primarily because of his <u>incredible physique</u> and charming face. He has a six-pack, which absolutely makes most girls wanna scream when they see it. Plus, when he smiles...oh, my god, his smile is <u>more</u> beautiful <u>than words can describe</u>.

I really like him because...haha, I'm the same as most other girls. I love how handsome he is. I hope my future boyfriend can be as good-looking as he is.

125

# 词汇 Key Words

dashing looks 迷人的面庞

gain great popularity nationwide 在全国范围内 大受欢迎

specialise in the freestyle 主攻自由泳 gain a large number of followers 获得大批追随者 incredible physique 令人难以置信的身形 more...than words can describe 无法用言语 形容 Describe a helpful person at work or school. You should say: who the person is what kind of person she or he is how this person helps you and explain why you think this person is helpful.

I'm going to talk about Feng who is the boss of a *travel agency* where I have been working for the past two years as a *part-time tour guide*.

He's <u>well-read</u> and <u>well-spoken</u> and he's extremely knowledgeable. Sometimes I just <u>refer to him as</u> a walking encyclopedia because he knows so much about Chinese culture, traditions and a lot about Chinese history. Plus, he's easy-going and <u>approachable</u>. He's always <u>willing to go out of his way to help other</u> people.

In terms of how he helps me...well, I'm only twenty years old, pretty young, right? As a tour guide, I really need to understand a lot about Chinese culture, but I don't. Sometimes, if there is something I can't make sense of, I just go to him and ask him for his clarification. He has never failed to explain it to me in detail. I remember two years ago, he asked me to lead a tour to the Summer Palace. That was the second time that I went to the Summer Palace. I had only been there once myself, so I wasn't sure whether I was going to do a good job. Before going there, he just explained everything to me. He told me all that I was going to say and do in the Summer Palace, I mean, that was great help. Um, I can't say the tour was a complete success, but *it went pretty smoothly*.

I think Feng has helped me quite a lot over the past two years, because I have improved considerably as a person, as a tour guide, and also as a communicator. I'm really *grateful to him*.

### 词汇 Key Words

travel agency 旅行社 part-time tour guide 兼职导游 well-read ['wel'red] *adj*. 有知识的 well-spoken ['wel'spəʊkən] *adj*. 能言善辩的 refer to sb. as... 把某人称为…… approachable [ə'prəʊtʃəbl] *adj*. 平易近人的 be willing to 愿意 go out of one's way to help others 竭尽全力帮 助别人 it goes smoothly 进行得比较顺畅 be grateful to sb. 对某人很感激 -



De	scribe a creative inventor or musician.	
Yo	u should say:	
	who this person is	
	what this person does	
	how you know this person	
an	d explain why you think this person is creative.	

I'm going to talk about a very famous singer in China, whose name is Lee Hom. He's so well-known that everyone knows him, including my mom. My mom is already 56 years old, but she claims to be Lee Hom's biggest fan.

Like I said, he's a singer, so he sings, <u>releases albums</u>, <u>goes on tour</u> and so on. In fact, just before this test, in order to <u>calm myself down</u>, you know, this is such a <u>nerve-wracking</u> experience...In order to <u>get</u> <u>rid of the nerves</u>, I just listened to one of his songs <u>time and time again</u>—Forever Love, which is a really beautiful song.

Anyway, I know Lee Hom because...I remember very clearly, ten years ago, I was hanging out with a good friend of mine one day in a shopping mall, and then a song *grabbed my attention*. My friend told me the singer was Lee Hom, so after I got home, I found all his albums on the Internet and bought all of them.

I think Lee Hom is such a creative musician because...well, he <u>composes</u> and sings many different songs, of various styles—R&B, rap, rock and roll, jazz, so on and so forth. Plus, he gets <u>inspiration</u> from literally everything...

# 词汇 Key Words

release albums 发行专辑 go on tour 巡回演出 calm myself down 令我镇静 / 平静 nerve-wracking ['n3:v,rækɪŋ] *adj.* 令人非常紧 张的 time and time again 一遍又一遍 grab my attention 吸引我的注意力 compose [kəm'pəʊz] v. 作曲 inspiration [,ɪnspə'reɪʃn] n. 灵感

get rid of the nerves 缓解紧张情绪



I'm going to talk about my roommate, Nancy. We've <u>developed a really close bond</u> since she moved in with me.

We've been living together for 2 years. If I remember correctly, it was in July that she began living with me.

Anyway, she moved into my apartment because she had just graduated from college and had been *looking for* a place to live. She was actually <u>a friend of a friend</u>, so she was told that there was a room available in my apartment. Plus, I couldn't afford the rent on my own. You know, I needed to pay 4,500 Yuan for this apartment and I really needed to <u>tighten my belt</u>, so I was on the lookout for a roommate at that time too. Luckily, I found her and she found me.

How it affected my life...well, I've got a new friend of course. You know, we hang out every day now and she has brought a lot of *joy* into my life. Plus, she is an amazing cook. She makes the best *spaghetti* I've ever tasted. You know, I used to cook on my own, but the food she cooks is far better than mine. So yeah, it's great that she moved in with me.

# 词汇 Key Words

develop a really close bond 关系变得非常好 look for sth. 寻找…… (= on the lookout for sth.) a friend of a friend 一个朋友的朋友 tighten my belt 勒紧裤腰带; 省钱 joy [dʒɔɪ] n. 快乐 spaghetti [spə'gett] n. 意大利面



Describe a foreign country that you want to visit but haven't been to. You should say: where this place is what it is like what you can do in this country and explain why you want to visit the country.

Well, I would like to visit Japan in the near future. Japan is quite close to China and it only takes about 4 or 5 hours to get there by plane, so visiting this country is actually pretty easy and convenient.

What it is like...well, honestly, I'm not sure where to start. Um, I guess I could say Japan is both modern and historical. I mean, if you go to Tokyo, there are many *skyscrapers* there, as well as *upscale restaurants* and *chic* clothing stores. However, if you go to Kyoto, you will see that it's *full of history*. I mean, it's filled with historic architecture.

If possible, my boyfriend and I would go to several cities in Japan. First of all, we will definitely go to Tokyo to do some shopping. Plus, I heard that Okinawa is a fantastic *tourist destination* because *the views there are breathtaking* and we can *go snorkeling*, which is something that I've been longing to do *for ages.* 

I would like to visit Japan because...well, there are tons of reasons actually. For starters, it's close to China and it's much easier to go there than other countries. Another reason is that the cosmetics there are extremely cheap and more importantly, of great quality. I believe I will do a lot of shopping there.

#### 词汇 Key Words

skyscraper [**'skaɪskreɪpə(r)]** n. 摩天大楼 upscale restaurant 高端的饭店 chic [ʃ**iːk]** *adj.* 时髦的 full of history 充满历史 tourist destination 旅游目的地 breathtaking views 非常美的风景 go snorkeling 去浮潜 for ages 很久 3

Describe a place where you can read or v	write (not your home).
You should say:	
where it is	
when you go there	
who you go there with	
and explain why you like to go there.	

I'm going to talk about a bookshop that is quite close to my apartment. It's just about 300 metres away, so I find it quite convenient to go and hang out there <u>either alone or with my friends</u>. Apart from being a bookshop, there's also a small cafe inside, so I think it's a great place where I can do some reading and stuff.

I go there on a regular basis, I mean, about two or three times a week.

I usually <u>pass the time</u> there with my girlfriend/boyfriend. You know, we two <u>have a lot in common</u> and we particularly enjoy reading. We're really fond of biographies. For instance, we went to this bookshop three days ago and we sat in the cafe for three hours. We were reading Steve Jobs' biography together. Besides that, we also had a discussion about Steve. We really had a pretty enjoyable time there.

Why I like to go there...well, I think it's primarily because I'm a big bookworm. I mean, I'm quite into reading and it's <u>an essential part of my life</u>. I find this bookshop a really nice place to read and think. Plus, I like it because of its cafe. The <u>atmosphere</u> there is great and um, the latte they make is so good.

词汇 Key Words



pass the time 打发时间

have a lot in common 有很多共同点

an essential part of my life 我生活中非常重要的一部分



atmosphere ['ætməsfɪə(r)] n. 氛围

Describe a street that you like to visit. You should say: where it is how often you go there what you like to do there and explain why you like it.

Well, I'm going to talk about a very famous and popular street in Beijing, called 王府井. It <u>draws</u> loads of shoppers and tourists—I mean, tourists both from other cities and countries. It's located <u>right in the heart</u> of the city, not very far from Tian'anmen Square.

I only go there from time to time, something like 2 or 3 times in a couple of months. I wish I could go more often, but my home is not near there at all and also, *I'm always tied-up with my studies*.

I can do tons of things there, like <u>sightseeing</u>, shopping and so on. I can do some sightseeing because there are a few historic sites. The most popular one is a Catholic Cathedral which <u>dates back to</u> 100 years ago. Plus, there are many chic clothing stores, <u>boutiques</u> as well as <u>name-brand factory stores</u> there, so it's a fantastic place to shop. For instance, the last time I went, I bought a pair of Nike shoes at the Nike factory store.

I think I really like this street simply because, as I mentioned earlier, there are so many things to do there. I mean, if you go to a big shopping centre, you can only buy things, right? But if you go to this street, there's a big variety of things you can do and I suppose this is what makes it so popular.

# 词汇 Key Words

draw [dro:] v. 吸引

right in the heart of the city 在城市的正中心 be tied-up with my studies 忙于我的学业

sightseeing ['sartsi:ɪŋ] n. 观光 date back to... 追溯至…… boutique [bu:'ti:k] n. 精品店

name-brand factory store 名牌工厂店

Describe a cafe or restaurant that impresses you. You should say: where it is how often you go there what kind of food they serve there and explain why you like this place.

I'm going to talk about a cafe called 明轩. In Chinese, I guess it translates as "bright place". It's within walking distance of my home, so I go there pretty often and pass the time by reading a book or doing my homework.

Since this cafe is really close to my apartment, I go there on a quite regular basis, I mean, about 2 or 3 times a week.

Anyway, as I said, it's a cafe, so it's not really famous for its food. What they do the best is the coffee. I particularly like their latte. But there's food there too and it's mainly western, like spaghetti, pizza and <u>risotto</u>.



I really like this place primarily because of its atmosphere. They play some soft music, which is very <u>soothing</u> and relaxing. So whenever I have time, I just go there alone and do some reading. It really helps me take my mind off things. Another reason why I'm quite fond of it is that,

as I mentioned earlier, their coffee is <u>awesome</u>. Actually, I brought a couple of friends there and they also thought the coffee was among the best they had ever tasted. Anyway, this place is my favourite place to hang out and I always tell people about it if I get a chance.

#### 词汇 Key Words

risotto [rɪ'zɒtəu] n. 意大利烩饭 soothing ['su:ðɪn] adi. 令人安静的 take my mind off things 让我不去想烦心事 awesome ['o:sem] adj. 极好的



# 雅思口语真经点纲

I'm going to talk about the Temple of Heaven, which is situated in the southeastern part of central Beijing. It was the place where emperors of the Ming Dynasty and Qing Dynasty held the Heaven Worship Ceremony. Now it's open to the public as a park and <u>residents nearby</u> can go for a walk inside. Plus, it's not uncommon for elderly people to do tai chi, play chess and other traditional Chinese games there.

I got to know the Temple of Heaven when I was just a small kid. I was just 7 or 8 years old then, if I remember correctly. My mom told me about it and brought me there later.

What it is like...well, it's pretty hard to describe. Well, this temple is even larger than the Forbidden City. It's enclosed by a long wall. The northern part within the wall is <u>semicircular</u>, <u>symbolising</u> the heavens and the southern part is <u>square</u>, symbolising the earth. The main altar lies in the heart of the whole temple and it was where emperors held worship ceremonies.

I think this temple is extremely important to my country mainly because it's <u>a link between the past</u> and the present. I mean, when you stand inside the temple, it just feels like all the history is around you and it reminds Chinese people of our <u>rich past</u>. In addition to this, everything inside this temple is so <u>beautifully</u> designed and decorated, so it's just like a gorgeous work of art.

# 词汇 Key Words

得很精美

residents nearby 附近的居民 be enclosed by a long wall 被很长的墙围起来 semicircular [,semɪ's3:kjələ(r)] adj. 半圆的 symbolise ['sɪmbəlaɪz] v. 象征 square [skweə(r)] adj. 方的 a link between the past and the present 一条连 接过去和现在的纽带 rich past 璀璨的历史; beautifully designed and decorated 设计和装饰



gorgeous ['gɔ:dʒəs] adj. 美丽的 work of art 艺术品

Describe a tall building in your hometown you like or dislike. You should say: where it is what it is used for what it looks like and explain why you like or dislike it.

I'm going to talk about my dormitory building, which is <u>on</u> my university <u>campus</u>. It's in the south of the university, not very far from the south gate. My university is in the northwestern suburb of my hometown, not in the city centre, so if I'm not mistaken, this 23-storey building is the tallest in the area.

Like I said before, it's a dormitory building. It *accommodates* about 1,000 students, freshmen and sophomores. All junior and senior students live in another building, close to the north gate of the university.

What it looks like...well It's just a <u>regular-looking</u> building, <u>greyish</u> in colour. Grey is the most common colour <u>when it comes to</u> buildings in China. But what's special about this building is that the windows are pretty big. They're <u>extraordinarily big</u> so they can let in more sunshine and air. All rooms in this building are <u>well-ventilated</u>, which is pretty good.

I like this building a lot because...well, first of all, I've been living there for 2 years already, so I'm quite attached to it. Apart from that, I live on the 7th floor, which I think is perfect. Most of the time, I take the elevator, but from time to time, I take the stairs and walk up. It's great *cardiovascular exercise* I suppose. Walking up and down helps me *keep fit and stay in shape*.

#### 词汇 Key Words

on campus 在校园里 (注意介词 on) accommodate [ə'komədeɪt] ½ 容纳 regular-looking ['regjələ(r)'lʊkɪŋ] *adj*, 长相普 通的

greyish ['greII] adj. 有点灰色的 when it comes to... 当提到……的时候 extraordinarily big 大得不同寻常 well-ventilated [**'wel'ventilertid**] adj. 通风 很好的

cardiovascular exercise 有氧运动

keep fit and stay in shape 保持健康、保持体形

Describe a park or garden you visited that yo	ou like.	
You should say:		
where it is/was		
what it looks/looked like		
what people do/did there		
and explain why you like this park/garden.		

I'm going to talk about a park that is quite close to my apartment. It's actually within walking distance, so if I'm not busy, I go there every day.

This park is quite gorgeous. There are so many trees inside, like <u>gingkos</u>, <u>willows</u>, and a lot of <u>pines</u>. Oh, my granddad once told me that some of the gingkos there are even hundreds of years old. Plus, there's a big lake in the centre of the park and you can <u>row a boat</u> on it. Of course, you have to hire one from the <u>boat shed</u>.

What people do there...well, we can do many things. For instance, some people like to <u>go for a stroll</u> there after dinner and others, especially elderly people, enjoy doing tai chi, playing mahjong and also chess with their friends. In my case, I often go jogging there. Yesterday, for example, I ran for 30 minutes and I

found it pretty relaxing.

I really like this park mainly because it's a wonderful place to unwind. You know, I'm always tiedup with my studies and it really <u>stresses me out</u>, so having a park near my home and doing some <u>leisure</u> <u>activities</u> definitely <u>does me good</u>. I feel that walking or jogging a little in this park really helps me take my mind off things. Besides, I really like the <u>peace and quiet</u> there...

### 词汇 Key Words

gingko ['gɪŋkəu] n. 银杏树 willow ['wɪləu] n. 柳树 pine [paɪn] n. 松树 row a boat 划船 boat shed 船棚 go for a stroll 去散步 stress me out 令我倍感压力 leisure activities 休闲活动



do me good 对我有好处 peace and quiet 平和安静

Describe an important place like (stadium, swimming pool) in your city. You should say: where it is how often you go there what people do there and explain why you think it is important.

I'm going to talk about the public swimming pool in the southwest of my hometown. It's <u>right next to</u> our public library, which is a *landmark* in the city, so it's really easy to find.

I like to go to this place in the summer because I go to university in another city. I can't go there when I'm at school. But <u>when the term ends</u>, especially during the summer holiday, I go there pretty regularly, something like 2 or 3 times a week.

Obviously, people just go swimming there. You can see people of all ages at the pool-old people, young people, kids. Many children go there to learn swimming. In fact, this is exactly what I did when I was a child. When I was 4 or 5 years old, my dad took me there to teach me how to swim. He said that swimming was a walk in the park, but I just found it super difficult. It took me weeks to *master* it.

Anyway, I think this swimming pool is a really important place in the city because it provides the local residents with a place to *work out*, to live a healthy life. In my



opinion, swimming is the best sport because it's relaxing, it doesn't make you feel too exhausted and it *trains any part of your body*.

# 词汇 Key Words

right next to 正挨着 landmark ['lændma:k] n. 地标 when the term ends 在学期结束之后 master sth. 熟练掌握 work out 健身

trains any part of your body 锻炼全身的任 何部位

Describe a change that would improve the area where you live. You should say: what change it would be why you think there should be this change what people would have to do and explain whether you think you would see this change.

There's a big problem in my hometown and it's the awful traffic. I really hope that it could be improved *in the not-too-distant future*. So I suppose if we could all take the public transport more, our roads wouldn't be too *congested*. So this is the change I'm going to talk about.

There should be this change primarily because, as I said, there are simply too many cars on the road, which means when you go to work or go to school, it always takes you a long time. Last Wednesday, for instance, I went to the Summer Palace. Although my home isn't far at all from the Summer Palace, it took me over one and a half hours to get there by bus. I found the busy traffic extremely <u>annoying</u>.

What people have to do? Well, as I mentioned earlier, it would be fantastic if we could all take the public transport because in that case, there would be fewer cars on the road. Also, perhaps we could try *carpooling*. I mean, for example, if my neighbour and I went to the same part of the city to work, we could share the same car.

I believe our traffic will be better in the near future because almost everyone *is fed up with* all the congestion in Beijing. In order to *reduce traffic*, people will definitely *take action*.

#### 词汇 Key Words

in the not-too-distant future 未来 (=in the near future)

congested [kən'dʒestɪd] adj. 拥堵的

annoying [ə'noɪɪŋ] adj. 令人厌烦的 carpool ['kɑ:pu:l] \* 拼车 be fed up with sth. 厌烦某事
reduce traffic 缓解交通

take action 采取措施

Describe a long journey you went on by car. You should say: where you went who you went there with what you did during the journey and explain why you went on the journey by car.

I'm going to talk about the time when I drove to Inner Mongolia. You know, I'm from Beijing and the place we went to was about 600 kilometres away, so I drove for almost 10 hours. It was extremely *exhausting* yet very *rewarding*.

I went with my girlfriend. It was her who decided that we would drive there. Actually, up until then, I'd already been to Inner Mongolia a couple of times, but she hadn't, so she was eager to go.

What we did on the journey...well, it was driving most of the time, of course. But we <u>pulled over</u> from time to time because I had to rest every once in a while. I wasn't a very experienced driver <u>after all</u>. Plus, it was really gorgeous <u>along the way</u>, so we always stopped to take photos. Oh, there's something else I shouldn't forget to tell you. My girlfriend is an amazing singer, so she kept singing all the way in order to make the drive not so boring. I think <u>the journey was a blast</u>.

Anyway, as for why we drove there...um, well, it was mainly because we both <u>had four days off</u>, so we had plenty of time to spend on the way thefe. Also, we <u>were quite convinced</u> <u>that</u> the journey would be very enjoyable, <u>what with</u> all the views <u>and stuff</u>. <u>It turned out that</u> we were right. We really had a ball.



# 词汇 Key Words

exhausting [ɪg'zɔ:stɪŋ] *adj.* 令人很累的 (=tiring) rewarding [rɪ'wɔ:dɪŋ] *adj.* 收获很大的 be eager to do sth. 渴望做某事 pull over 靠边停车 after all 毕竟 along the way 在路上 sth. is a blast 某事令我们很开心 have four days off 有四天休息时间 be convinced that 确认 ( = believe that) what with... 由于…… and stuff 等等 it turned out that..., 事实证明



Descri	be a long walk you ever had.	
You sh	nould say:	
w	hen this happened	
w	here you walked	
W	ho you walked with	
and ex	xplain how you felt about the walk.	

I'm going to talk about the time when I had a long walk on the Great Wall. It was the only time I'd been to the Great Wall and it was a blast. It was 2 years ago that I went there. At that time, I was really tied-up with my studies because I was busy preparing for the final exams. I decided to take a day off and go hiking somewhere to *put everything behind me*.

The section of the Great Wall I went to is located in the northeastern part of Beijing, quite close to Hebei Province. This section doesn't draw many tourists, so it felt great walking there, with very few other hikers.

Who I walked with...well, to be honest, I was just on my own. I went for this walk simply because I wanted to get away from it all and have some time completely to myself.

I felt very good about it because it really helped me take my mind off things. I wasn't thinking about my studies or my relationships. I was just really focusing on finishing the 4-hour hike. I mean, it was really exhausting, but it felt awesome. Plus, the views there were *stunning*. <u>At one point</u>, I had to <u>trek in the</u> <u>mountains</u> and it was great...

# 词汇 Key Words

put sth. behind me 把……抛之脑后 get away from it all 远离喧嚣 have some time completely to myself 有一些完 全独处的时间 stunning ['stʌnɪŋ] adj. 令人震惊的 at one point 在某一时刻 trek in the mountains 在山里走

Describe a paid job you did or someone you know did. You should say: what it was how you or this person found this job how long you or this person did this job and how you felt about this job.



I used to be a part-time tour guide a couple of years ago. I was an English tour guide and my guests

# 雅思口语真经总纲

were mainly westerners.

I was a sophomore at university when I began this job. One of my teachers <u>referred me to</u> a small company called China Culture Centre. This company <u>specialises in</u> introducing foreigners to Chinese culture and apart from tours, they also give courses and talks on different aspects of Chinese culture, like traditional Chinese food, Peking Opera, Fengshui and so forth.

This job *lasted* two years. I'm extremely *thankful* for these two years because I went to tons of places in China, such as Tibet, Inner Mongolia and Xinjiang. Being a tour guide really helped to *expand my horizons*. While telling foreigners about our country, I learned a lot as well. Plus, this experience allowed me to *hone my communication skills*. To be honest, I had always *been pretty shy around people*, but since I had no choice but to talk with my guests all the time, I gradually got more *extroverted*.

How I felt about this job...well, it was a very valuable experience for me. I mean, as I mentioned earlier, I learned so much during that period and I, as a person, grew up a lot too. I'm really grateful to my teacher and to China Culture Center for giving me this opportunity.

# 词汇 Key Words

refer sb. to... 把某人推荐给…… specialise in... 专门从事…… last [lɑ:st] v. 持续 be thankful 心存感激 (= be grateful) expand my horizons 开拓我的视野 hone my communication skills 锤炼我的沟 通能力 be shy around people 比较内向 extroverted ['ekstrəuv3:trd] adj. 外向的

Describe a success in your life. You should say: when and where this happened who you were with what you did and how you felt about the success.

I'm going to talk about the time when I succeeded in losing weight. You know, three years ago, I was a really <u>chubby</u> girl. I was not exactly <u>obese</u>, but I already felt that I had to do something. So I began to lose weight.

Of course, I did everything alone. There was no other person who was trying to <u>shed pounds</u> with me. But I had the support of my family members and my friends. They always encouraged me and um, I suppose <u>I owe some of my success to them</u>.

Anyway, what I did...well, I did a combination of things. For starters, I had to cut down on my calorie intake, so basically I stopped eating junk food, such as hamburgers, French fries and ice cream.

Instead, I ate a lot of fruit every day, like apples, lychees, strawberries and so on. Plus, I think what was *fundamental* in my success was that I went jogging on a daily basis. I would jog in the park for 30 minutes both in the morning and in the evening. After about half a year, I successfully lost 30 pounds. Actually, now, I can't really believe I did it.

How I felt about the success...well, I'm pretty proud of myself. You know, I really <u>put a lot of effort</u> <u>into it</u> and as I said, it's unbelievable that I didn't <u>give up</u>. I feel much more confident now than before.

# 词汇 Key Words

chubby ['tʃʌbɪ] *adj.* 比较胖的 obese [əʊ'bi:s] *adj.* 非常胖的 shed pounds 减肥 ( = lose weight) owe sth. to sb. 把……归功于…… do a combination of things 做一些事 (组合) cut down on my calorie intake 减少卡路里摄入量 fundamental [,fʌndə'mentl] *adj* 主要的; 基本的 put a lot of effort into sth. 对某事付出很多 努力 give up 放弃

Describe a team you have been part of. You should say: when this team was formed who were on the team what you did together and explain whether you liked to be on that team.

Well, I'm going talk about the time when I gave a presentation with <u>a bunch of classmates</u>. It was back in college and I was a sophomore. Our English teacher divided us into groups of five people and each group would give a presentation about an aspect of Chinese culture.

I just *teamed up with* four of my best friends in the class. You know, we were really *tight*, so basically we did everything together.

Honestly, preparing for that presentation was no picnic. We decided to talk about Fengshui, or more specifically, why there was always a river or lake built to the north of an important building. We read many books about it and then we wrote down everything that we were going to say. Luckily, the presentation went really well and we were on cloud nine when our teacher *made some very positive comments*.

Whether I liked to be on that team...well, yeah, sure. I mean, as I said, I worked with my closest friends and we felt really comfortable working together. Although our opinions might <u>differ</u> sometimes, we never <u>had a falling out</u>. So yeah, it was really enjoyable working with them.

139

词汇 Key Words

give a presentation 做报告 / 展示 / 演讲 a bunch of classmates 几个同班同学 team up with sb. 和某人组成一队 tight [tart] adj. 紧密的 make some positive comments 做出积极评价

differ ['dɪfə(r)] w 不同 have a falling out 争吵;不和

Describe a time when you felt surprised to meet someone.
You should say:
when it was
who you met
what you did together that day
and explain why you thought it was a surprise to meet this person.

I'm going to talk about the time when I met my primary school classmate, Jack. It was two years ago, in July, if my memory serves me correctly. I went on a trip to Dalian, a *coastal city* in the north of China.

Who I met...well, as I said, I met Jack. You know, we used to be really close friends when we were young. We would hang out together every day, playing soccer, basketball and many other games. We always *had a ball* together. But then, we went to different secondary schools and we *gradually lost touch*. I met Jack in a big shopping mall on my second day in Dalian. When I saw him, I just thought this guy looked pretty familiar and we looked at each other for a while until I realised it was him. I was so surprised and more importantly, *happy as a clam*.

Anyway, we went to a Starbucks later and *did a lot of catching up*. We talked about how our lives had been and where we were living and working. Oh, by the way, he told me that he was going to get married in October and invited me to his wedding. I was on cloud nine that day.

I think it was a big surprise primarily because Jack was my primary school classmate and we hadn't seen each other in years. Also, it was not in Beijing, I mean, we both went to Dalian at the same time. It was such a small world.

## 词汇 Key Words

coastal city 海滨城市 have a ball 玩得很开心 gradually lose touch 逐渐失去联系 happy as a clam 超级开心的 ( = on cloud nine) do a lot of catching up 叙旧



Describe a time that you and your friend had a disagreement. You should say: when this happened who you disagreed with what you and your friend argued about and explain whether you two solved the disagreement in the end.

I'm going to talk about the time when I had a disagreement with my friend, Yaohui. His English name is Peter. It was a couple of weeks ago, on a Saturday, if I remember correctly. I was free that day and I didn't know what to do to pass the time.

I asked Peter what he had in mind. You know, Peter and I are <u>really tight friends</u>; we're <u>as thick as</u> <u>thieves</u> and we like to do everything together. We'd never had a falling out or anything, so I didn't expect that we'd have an argument that day.

What he wanted to do was go to a bakery to learn how to make a cake.sI was quite <u>shocked</u> when he said it because, to me, it was something that a girl would do. However, he was pretty <u>adamant</u>. I told him that what I thought would be a great idea was to <u>go on a picnic</u> in Beihai Park, which is quite close to the Forbidden City. The problem was, neither of us would <u>budge</u>.

Well, at last, we <u>reached an agreement</u>. Since it was Saturday, we could go to the park that day and go to the bakery on Sunday. After all, we're best friends; we wouldn't be angry with each other forever.

#### 词汇 Key Words

really tight friends 很好的朋友 as thick as thieves 关系特别好 shocked [**ʃokt**] *adj*. 吃惊的 adamant [**'ædəmənt**] *adj*. 坚定的 go on a picnic 去野餐 budge [bʌdʒ] v. 让步 reach an agreement 达成一致

Describe an artistic activity you did at school. You should say: when this happened who you did it with what you did in the activity and explain how you felt about this activity.

I'm going to talk about the time when I performed at the New Year Party at high school. It was already 7 years ago now, but I still <u>remember it vividly</u> because it was the first time that I had performed in front of <u>a big crowd of people</u>. I was extremely nervous.

#### 雅思口语真经总纲

My performance was hip-hop dance, and I did it with four other students. You know, in my first year at high school, one of my classmates *formed a dance crew* and asked me to join. I could do a little popping at that time and I thought "why not". The thing is, I never imagined we would *give such a nerve-wracking performance* one day.

Anyway, um, the dance lasted about 5 minutes, but it felt like hours to me. <u>There were about 300</u> <u>people in the audience</u> and they <u>gave us a big round of applause</u> after our performance. To be honest, my heart was still beating really fast then.

How I felt about it...well, it's hard to say because right after the performance, I thought I would never dance in front of so many people again. But, a few minutes later, I was actually pretty happy that I had done it. I mean, I was really proud that I was *the centre of attention* then. You know, it felt really good.

#### 词汇 Key Words

remember it vividly 清晰地记得 a big crowd of people 很多人 form a dance crew 创建一个舞团 give a performance 演出 nerve-wracking 令人无比紧张的 there are about 300 people in the audience 大约 有 300 名观众

give sb. a big round of applause 给某人以 热烈的掌声 the centre of attention 焦点

Describe an educational trip you went on. You should say: where you went who you went there with what you did during the trip and explain why you thought this trip was educational.

I'm going talk about the time I went to the History Museum with my classmates. This trip was organised by our high school teacher, Mr Li. He taught us history. He brought us there so that we could *gain* <u>a better understanding of</u> our country's past. Well, this museum is situated in the very heart of Beijing, I mean, right next to the Forbidden City. But unfortunately, we didn't go there. We just spent the entire afternoon in the museum.

What we did there...well, we took a walk inside the museum with a guide who was an expert on Chinese history. We started from the section where weapons and pottery from 2,000 years ago were <u>on</u> *display*. Our guide talked about the first dynasty in our country, the Qin Dynasty. Oh, by the way, the Great Wall was built then. After that, the guide showed us around sections that <u>were dedicated to</u> the following dynasties like the Tang Dynasty, Song Dynasty and so forth. Although we were really busy taking notes and <u>memorising stuff</u>, we still had a ball there.

I think this trip was quite educational primarily because we, at least, I, gained a great deal of *knowledge* about our own history. Also, to be honest, history *wasn't really my cup of tea* then, but this trip *sparked my interest in* this subject and I decided to learn it better.

# 词汇 Key Words

gain a better understanding of...更深入了解…… on display 展出 be dedicated to sth. 专门用于…… memorise sth. 记住…… gain a great deal of knowledge 学到很多知识

not my cup of tea 我不喜欢……

spark my interest in sth. 激起我对……的兴趣



Describe a special trip you would like to go on in the future. You should say: where you would like to go who you would like to go with what you would do there and explain why it would be a special trip.

I would really like to go to Okinawa. Okinawa is an island in Japan and it's extremely famous across the world for its spectacular views.

I would most likely go there with my girlfriend because actually no matter where I go, she is with me.

What we would do there...well, as far as I know, there are a couple of fun things to do. First of all, I would like to go snorkeling with my girlfriend. To be honest, my dream is to *go scuba-diving* one day.

Snorkeling would be something exciting to start with. Plus, there are many American *military bases* in Okinawa and the most famous one is called the Kadena Air Base, if I'm not mistaken. It would be great if I could go there and, you know, just take a look.

Why it would be a special trip...well, honestly, I think no matter where you go, it could be special, as long as it's somewhere you haven't been



#### 雅思口语真经总纲

before. But if I had to give an answer, I'd say that visiting the Air Base would definitely <u>set it apart</u> <u>from</u> other trips because you can always go somewhere with stunning views, but not all places have a military base for you to see. So yeah, hopefully, I could go there soon and I'm convinced it would be an unforgettable experience.

# 词汇 Key Words

go scuba-diving 去潜水 military base 军事基地 set it apart from.... 使其有别于……

Describe something you do to stay healthy. You should say: what you do when you started doing this how often you do this/how much time you spend doing it and explain how it helps you stay healthy.

Well, honestly, I'm not really <u>an outdoorsy type</u>. I mean, I'm not <u>a gym rat</u>; I don't like sports at all, so I don't think there's anything physical that I can talk about. But I really enjoy eating fruit. I mean, different kinds of fruit, so this is what I'm going to talk about.

When I started doing this...God, how am I supposed to answer this? I started eating a great amount of fruit 3 or 4 years ago. I used to eat a lot of *junk food* every day and I *put on so much weight*. Then, I *made up my mind* to lose weight and I began eating a big variety of fruit, like cherries, lychees, Hami melon and so on. You can see that I'm *in great shape* now and I suppose I owe it to my fruit-eating habit.

Ever since I started this habit, I've been eating different kinds of fruit every day. You know, sometimes, I even put some apples or grapes in my backpack so that I can eat them even on the bus.

Anyway, eating fruit helps me stay healthy because...well, I guess it's primarily because fruit doesn't contain much *fat* and it's *low in calories*, so as I said, it helps me lose weight. Plus, no matter what kind of fruit it is, it contains many types of vitamins, which is definitely very beneficial to my health...

# 词汇 Key Words

an outdoorsy type 喜欢户外运动的人 a gym rat 喜欢在健身房运动的人 junk food 垃圾食品 put on weight 增肥 make one's mind 下定决心 in great shape 身材很好 fat [fæt] n. 脂肪

low in calories 低卡路里

Describe an activity that you feel exc	cited about.
You should say:	
what it is	
where you can do it	
how you do it	
and explain why you feel excited abo	out it.

I'm going to talk about hiking, which is my favourite leisure and outdoor activity. Hiking is becoming more and more popular in China and a lot of people around me have  $\frac{taken \ it \ up}{x}$  in recent years, so we just often go hiking together.

There are many places in and around my hometown where I can hike, but my favourite <u>spot</u> is the 金 山岭 section of the Great Wall, which is situated in the northeast of Beijing. It <u>borders</u> Hebei Province and is quite picturesque. I really love this place because hiking there is extremely challenging. I mean, I have to walk for at least four hours to another section named 古北口, both on and off the wall. Each time after the hike, I feel <u>worn-out</u>, but proud as well.

How I do it...um, I'm not sure how to answer this...well, before a hike, I have to fill my backpack with several bottles of water in case I get <u>dehydrated</u>. Plus, <u>sunscreen</u> is a <u>necessity</u> as well. After all the preparation, I just begin walking...and um, that's it.

I feel pretty excited about walking because it allows me to be in <u>the great outdoors</u>, which gives me the best feeling I think. You know, seeing all the stunning views and meeting all kinds of difficulties while hiking is quite exhilarating.

#### 词汇 Key Words

take sth. up 开始做某事 spot [**spot**] *n*. 地点 border ['**bɔ**:də(**r**)] *v*. 和……相邻 worn-out ['**wɔ**:n'aut] *adj*. 非常疲劳 ( = very tired) dehydrated [,di:har'drertrd] *adj*. 脱水的 sunscreen ['sʌnskri:n] n. 防晒霜 necessity [nə'sesətɪ] n. 必要的东西 the great outdoors 大自然; 户外 Describe something you would like to do if you were given a day off. (注意 虚拟语气) You should say: what you would like to do who would you like to be with where you would like to do it and explain how you would feel at the end of the day.

If I had a day off, I would most likely stay at home and learn English. I'm not lying, this is definitely what I would do if my teacher told me that I didn't have to go to school tomorrow, because I've grown quite fond of learning English recently. You know, I've been preparing for this IELTS test for the past couple of months and I've realised learning English is quite fun. Normally, every day after I get up, I will read several BBC articles and then <u>note down</u> some useful words and phrases. Then, I will watch one or two episodes of *Friends*, you know, the American sitcom. I've found that my English has <u>improved dramatically</u> over the past several months.

Who I would like to be with...well, I guess I would just be alone, because most of my friends don't like learning English. They find it boring and difficult.

I guess I would go to the coffeehouse within walking distance of my home. It's where I often go and pass the time. Plus, their coffee is pretty good, and more importantly, really cheap.

How I would feel at the end of the day...well, to be honest with you, I wouldn't feel anything special because this is something that I've been doing for months. If I had to give an answer, I'd say I would feel that my day was not wasted.

#### idal Key Words

have a day off 休息一天 note down 记下来 improve dramatically 大幅提升



Describe a situation where you waited for something. You should say: when and where it happened who you were with how long you waited for it and explain how you felt about the waiting. I'm going to talk about the time when I waited for the sunrise. It was two years ago, during the winter vacation actually. My parents and I went to Yuanyang, which is a small county in Yunnan Province. Yuanyang is famous for its spectacular <u>rice terraces</u>. My dad is a huge fan of photography, so he really wanted to <u>capture the sunrise</u> there.

Anyway, who I was with...well, apart from my parents, there were also hundreds of people there waiting for the sun. The platform where we were standing was *overcrowded* and at one point, I couldn't even see whether the sun was up or not, because *after all*, I'm pretty short.

We waited for exactly two hours because it was pretty foggy that day and although it was already 7 o'clock, the sun was still not *in sight*. Then, *it suddenly cleared up* and finally, everybody got what they wanted. We were all super happy.

How I felt about the waiting...well, to be honest, I felt extremely cold at that time. Haha, just kidding. Well, I think *it was well worth it*, because after all, my dad got some really amazing photos. We showed them to some neighbours after we got back and they *were really stunned by* the breathtaking views...

#### 词汇 Key Words

rice terraces 梯田 capture the sunrise 捕捉日出的景象 (拍照) overcrowded [,əʊvə'kraudɪd] adj. 非常拥挤的 after all 毕竟 in sight 在视线以内 it suddenly clears up 天气突然变晴了 it is well worth it 很值得 be stunned by...因……而吃惊

Describe something you've wanted to	o do for a long time but haven't done
yet.	
You should say:	
what it is	
where you want to do it	
how easy or difficult it is	
and explain why you want to do it.	

I'm going to talk about yoga, which, as everybody knows, is one of the most popular <u>forms of</u> <u>relaxation as well as physical activities</u>. In recent years, it's been <u>growing fast in popularity</u> in China and many of my friends are doing it on a regular basis. I've wanted to take up yoga for quite a long time.

As far as I know, there's a gym not far from my home which offers yoga classes. I haven't <u>checked</u> them out yet, but if I finally decide to practice yoga, I might go and see if their classes <u>suit me</u>. Plus, I bet I would also buy a <u>yoga mat</u> and practice at home since I might want to do it every day and going to a class on a daily basis might be a little <u>pricey</u> for me. In terms of the level of difficulty...um, I'm convinced that doing yoga is extremely difficult, at least for me I think, because there's a lot of <u>stretching</u> involved and I'm not very flexible. But no matter how <u>dreadful</u> it may sound, I'd try my best if one day I make up my mind to begin doing it.

I've wanted to practice yoga *for ages* mainly because of its calming and relaxing effect. Over the past few years, I've constantly felt *a great amount of anxiety* and my stress levels can be quite high sometimes. I've been told that yoga has an amazing effect on *calming people's nerves*, so I think it's *worth a try*.

# 词汇 Key Words

form of relaxation 放松方式 form of physical activity 健身方式 grow in popularity 越来越流行 check sth. out 看看…… suit me 适合我 yoga mat 瑜伽垫 pricey ['praisi] *adj.* 昂贵的 ( = expensive) stretch [stretf] v. 拉伸 dreadful ['dredfl] *adj.* 可怕的



for ages 很久了 a great amount of anxiety 很焦虑 calm sb.'s nerves 使某人不那么紧张、焦虑 worth a try 值得尝试



I'm going to talk about the time when I was busy <u>gearing up for</u> my final exams. I think it was like 6 years ago, when I was in my second year of university to be honest with you, I hadn't studied hard enough that semester. You know, I <u>skipped</u> a lot of <u>classes</u> and so was really worried about the <u>finals</u>.

In order to prepare for the exams, I went to our school library every single day for two weeks. I would run there at 7 o'clock in the morning and stay there for the whole day and just, you know, *cram*!

Anyway, what I did...um, well, I just read and read and <u>took</u> a lot of <u>notes</u> and memorised them. I also took photos of the things I had to learn so that when I was <u>waiting in line</u> to buy food or eating, I could study too. So, yeah, I just <u>seized every opportunity possible</u> to learn.

How I felt about it ... well, I obviously felt extremely worn-out every day, with all the hard work that I

*put into* the exam preparation. Plus, I felt that I was *indeed* an idiot because I had wasted so much time not studying. If I had studied more before, I wouldn't have been that exhausted every day.

# 词汇 Key Words

gear up for 为……做准备 (= prepare for) skip classes 逃课 finals ['faɪnəlz] n. 期末考试 (= final exams) cram [kræm] u (为应考) 临时死记硬背;填 鸭式学习

take notes 做笔记

wait in line 排队

seize every opportunity possible 抓住每个可能 的机会



put hard work into sth. 为……下苦功 indeed [**ɪn'di:d**] *edv.* 确实

change.

I'm going to talk about the time when I fell in love with travelling. You know, travelling is *an integral part of my life* now and I do it whenever I *have several days off*. For instance, I'm planning on going to Okinawa for a few days next month.

I fell in love with it three years ago. As a matter of fact, I'd never been that into going to different places before that. I always thought it was a waste of money and I would just rather stay home and watch some movies if I wanted to do something to unwind. But this totally changed in that summer three years back.

How it happened...well, my girlfriend and I went to Saipan on vacation. I'm not sure if you know this place, but it's absolutely one of the most picturesque islands all over the world. The views there are so stunning that when I got off the plane after I arrived there, the beauty literally <u>took my breath away</u>. My girlfriend and I swam in the sea, went snorkeling and did tons of other fun things. It was definitely a <u>once</u> <u>in-a-lifetime experience</u>. It was then that I realised that travelling was actually one of the most relaxing and enjoyable things.

I think this was a positive change mainly because travelling has made my life more fun and more exciting than before. I'm not the boring, dull person that I was three years ago. Plus, I've also realised that I understand the world better now...

### 词汇 Key Words

an integral part of my life 我生活中不可分割的

一部分

have several days off 放几天假

take my breath away (美丽、奇特、壮观得) 令我窒息

once-in-a-lifetime experience 一生仅有一 次的经历

Describe a time when someone or something made a lot of noise. You should say: when it was who/what was making the noise what kind of noise it was and explain how you felt about it.

I'm going to talk about the time when a student made a lot of noise in my school library. It was three months ago, on a Friday, if I remember correctly. I think it was around 2 o'clock in the afternoon and I was in the library preparing for my final exams.

Then, I heard a student talking very loudly. Can you believe that? We were in the library and he was talking so loudly that I couldn't concentrate on my studies any more. So yeah, that noise was really annoying at first. Since I couldn't concentrate any more, I just began to listen to what he was saying. Well, it seemed like that he was on the phone with his girlfriend.

In terms of what they were talking about. well, I think his girlfriend just wanted to <u>break up with</u> him, because he said something like, "<u>Are you kidding me?</u> We've been <u>going out</u> for 3 years already and now you wanna end this? I can't believe what l just heard".

How I felt about this noise...well, as I was saying, at first, I was pretty annoyed by it, but a few minutes later, I got more and more curious. I really wanted to know why the girl wanted to split with the boy and whether they're still together now.

#### 词汇 Key Words

break up with 分手 (= split) Are you kidding me? 你在和我开玩笑吗? go out 交往; 谈恋爱

Describe a time you got a little angry.	
You should say:	A C. S. P. S. Same
when it happened	
where it happened	
who you were with	
and explain why you were angry.	

I'm going to talk about the time when I got overcharged by a taxi driver.

It happened two months ago, on a Saturday, and I went to a dinner organised by one of my high school classmates. In fact, most of my high school classmates and I hadn't seen each other for ages, so I was really happy that day that we could *get together* and *catch up*.

The place where we had dinner was a really *fancy restaurant* in the north of the city, which is pretty far from my home. You know, I live in the south, so after we finished our dinner, I hailed a taxi to take me back home.

The taxi driver seemed to be a rather nice guy because when I first got into the taxi, I felt it was pretty <u>chilly</u> and he just turned the heat up. Then, at some point during the ride, he began to smoke. You know, I seriously hate the smell of cigarettes, so I said I'd rather he not smoke and he just stopped it immediately. I thought that was really nice of him. After about 55 minutes, I arrived home. The total taxi fare was 120 yuan. I gave him the money, asked for a receipt and got out.



The problem was, when I told my mum that it cost me 120 yuan to come back home from the part of town I was talking about, the north of the city, she said I <u>was ripped off</u>. It should have only cost 70 yuan. I had no idea why I was overcharged that extra 50 yuan, and I was really angry.

#### 词汇 Key Words

get together 聚会 catch up 叙旧 fancy restaurant 高级饭店 chilly ['tʃɪlɪ] adj. 寒冷的 be ripped off 受骗

Describe a situation when someone gave you a piece of useful advice. You should say: what the situation was who gave it to you what the advice was and explain why you think the advice was useful. I'm going to talk about a piece of advice I received at university.

Ever since I was a kid, I had always been a shy and <u>reserved</u> boy that didn't quite like <u>socialising with</u> people. Plus, I was very <u>reluctant</u> in terms of making changes in life. <u>It turned out</u> being like this hadn't done me any good.



During my sophomore year at university, my best friend Andy gave me a piece of advice that *fundamentally* changed my life. What he told me

was that I should be more open to people and the world. His exact words were: open yourself to the rest of the world, and the world will open itself to you.

I found his advice really useful to me and at that point, I made up my mind to hang out with people more and explore the world more. Actually at present, it's more of exploring the country. I've been to a bunch of places in China and my horizons have been greatly expanded. In addition, whenever I see a friend, I will greet him or her with a broad smile on my face which in return has won me a lot of popularity among friends. What I feel is that I'm much happier than before and more confident when chatting with people. I'm really thankful to Andy.

词汇 Key Words

reserved [rr'z3:vd] adj. 内敛的 socialise with... 与……交往 reluctant [rr'lʌktənt] adj. 不情愿的 it turned out... 事实证明……

fundamentally [fnndə'mentəli] adv. 根本性地

Describe a gift for others that took you long time to choose.
You should say:
what it was
who you gave it to
why it took you a long time to choose
and explain why you chose this gift in the end.

I'm going to talk about a book that I gave to my one-year-old niece on her birthday. It's called 《熟睡的小兔子》. I guess it could translate as *The Rabbit Who's Sound Asleep*. It's written by a *psychologist* and *linguist*. Sorry, I can't remember the author's name.

This gift took me a long time to choose because I had several options then. For example, I wanted to give her a Barbie doll because I thought most baby girls would be fond of it. The thing is, most of the gifts I thought of were not <u>creative</u> at all, so I really <u>racked my brains</u> to come up with a good one.

At last, I decided to buy this book to her coz a lot of moms were <u>raving about it</u>. It <u>shot to the top of</u> <u>Amazon's best-seller list</u> right after it <u>came out</u>. I heard that if you read this book to your baby, they will soon be sleepy and oh, here's something very important: while reading the book, you should also <u>yawn</u> from time to time. It will get your kid to fall asleep really fast. After I read some <u>reviews</u> on Amazon, I decided that this book would be the best gift because my niece was <u>having difficulty falling asleep</u> at night. Last time I checked, it's not as hard as before to put her to sleep now. I feel really happy about it.

#### 词汇 Key Words

psychologist [sar'kolədʒɪst] n. 心理学家 linguist ['lɪŋgwɪst] n. 语言学家 creative [krɪ'eɪtɪv] adj. 有新意的 rack my brains 绞尽脑汁 rave about sth. 对……大加赞赏 shoot to the top of the Amazon's best-seller list 迅速冲上亚马逊畅销书榜 come out 出版



yawn [jo:n] v 打哈欠 review [rɪ'vju:]<sup>\*</sup>. 评论 have difficulty doing sth. 做某事有困难

Describe an electronic device you want to buy.	
You should say:	
what it is	
when you got to know this device	
what specific features it has	
and explain why you want to buy this electronic	c device.

I would really like to buy a Kindle, you know, the most popular <u>e-book reader</u> at the moment. Actually, no matter where you go now, you can see many people use it to read.

I got to know this device about two years ago, so it's been quite a long time already. I remember one day, I was reading a book on the subway. I noticed that the passenger next to me was also reading, but he was reading with an electronic device. *Out of curiosity*, I asked him what it was and that was how I got to know it.

Anyway, as for its features...well, as a matter of fact, I don't think I know much about it, as all I know is that I can use it to do some reading. I suppose it would be possible for me to make notes and <u>bookmark</u> pages too.

I would like to buy a Kindle primarily because I'm a big bookworm; I'm crazy about reading. I find that reading *has a soothing effect on my nerves*. But sometimes, my backpack gets really heavy if I have several books with me at the same time. If I had a Kindle, I could download many books into it and it would allow me to read any book at any time.

#### 词汇 Key Words

e-book reader 电子书阅读器 out of curiosity 出于好奇 bookmark pages 收藏页面;设定书签 have a soothing effect on my nerves 有令我 安静的作用

Describe an important letter you received. You should say: when you received it who sent it to you what the letter was about and explain why this letter was important to you.

I'm going to talk about a letter I received in middle school. I was 14 years old then and it was a Monday afternoon that I got the letter. I <u>remember that particular day very distinctly</u> because that letter was of great importance to me and I <u>treasured it</u> so much. In fact, it's still somewhere in my apartment now.

The person who sent this letter to me was a pretty girl in my class. I had a crush on her then. I even thought to myself, "I want to spend the rest of my life with this girl". When I was in middle school, I <u>kept a</u> <u>diary</u> every day and I would record my feelings for her in the diary every evening.

In terms of what letter was about...well, it was pretty unbelievable because she <u>took the initiative</u> and told me that she liked me!!! You know, I had never had the <u>guts</u> to tell her my feelings, but she did it first!!!

I think that letter was extremely important to me because I <u>found out</u> that our <u>affection</u> towards each other was <u>mutual</u>. After that, we became boyfriend and girlfriend and we were together for four months until my mom found that I <u>was seeing somebody</u> in middle school. But anyway, <u>puppy love</u> is always precious.

#### 词汇 Key Words

remember sth. distinctly/vividly 清楚地记得某事 treasure sth. 珍惜某事 keep a diary 记日记 take the initiative 采取主动 guts [gʌts] n. 勇气 find out 发现 affection [ə'fekʃn] n. 感情



mutual ['mju:tʃuəl] *adj.* 相互的 be seeing sb. 和某人在一起,在和某人谈 恋爱 puppy love 初恋 、



Describe a photo of yourself that you like.	1
You should say:	
where you took the photo	
when you took it	
how you took it	
and explain how you felt about the photo.	

I'm going to talk about a photo of myself that hangs on my bedroom wall. It's one of my favourite photos, so I just put it on the wall right opposite my bed so that every morning when I wake up, I can see it.

This photo was taken in the swimming pool just *around the corner from where I live*. I always go there to swim for *an hour or so*, especially on the weekend.

It was taken last year, in September, if I remember correctly. One day, I went there with my girlfriend and while we were walking by the pool, she kicked me down into the water and when I was struggling, she took this photo with her cellphone. When I finally stood up in the water and looked at her, she was laughing really hard...

I didn't feel so good when I fell into the pool of course, but now, I just find the photo pretty <u>amusing</u>. I don't know why but I just have this strange liking for <u>weird photos</u>, so this one is one of my favourites, like I mentioned earlier...

#### 词汇 Key Words

around the corner from where I live 离我家很近 an hour or so 一小时左右 amusing [ə'mju:zɪŋ] adj. 搞笑的 weird photo 怪异的照片

Describe something that you saved money to buy. You should say: what it was why you wanted to buy it how long it took you to save the money

and explain how you felt after you bought it.

Alright, so, what I gonna talk about is a CD that I bought when I was only 12 years old. It was a CD of my favourite singer, Jay Chou and it was called *Fantasy*.

Although I was only 12, you know, still <u>a 6th grader</u>, I had already been a huge fan of Jay for a couple of years. Plus, I had collected all of his albums before which were kind of like treasures in my life. So,

when this new CD was released, I felt obliged to buy it because my collection had to be complete.

Anyway, it actually took me almost a month to successfully save all the money I needed to buy this CD and I remember tightening my belt every single day in order to save as much as possible. *That said*, I only *put aside* one yuan on a daily basis most of the time because I didn't have *a very big allowance* and the CD cost 40 something yuan which *was like a fortune* to me at that time.

How I felt... um, the very moment I paid for it, I felt a sense of achievement as well as relief because I didn't have to save money anymore. But anyway, it was great when I finally got this CD and listened to it every day <u>on my way to and from school</u>.

# 词汇 Key Words

a 6th grader 一个六年级学生 release [rr'li:s] v. 发行 feel obliged to do sth. 觉得应该做某事 that said 话虽如此 put aside 储蓄

a big allowance 一大笔零花钱 be like a fortune 像一笔财富 on my way to and from school 在我上学和 放学的路上

Describe a piece of equipment in your home. You should say: what it is how often you use it who you use it with

and explain why you like using this piece of equipment.

I'm going to talk about my *coffeemaker*, which is probably my favourite item in my apartment. It was actually a gift from my girlfriend. I had *revealed* to her that it would be fantastic if I could have a coffeemaker of my own, so she bought me one as a birthday gift last year.

I use it every single day now, in the morning, of course. I usually drag myself out of bed around 6:30, and then I'll put some coffee beans in the maker and let it work. Then, I'll <u>sip</u> some coffee that I made

myself while watching the morning news. This whole process feels extremely enjoyable.

Who I use it with... um, how should I talk about this point? You know, I live alone, so most of the time, it's only me that uses this coffeemaker. But from time to time, I invite some of my close friends



over to my apartment and I make some coffee for them if they feel like it.

I love this coffeemaker a lot simply because I'm a coffee <u>aficionado</u>. I won't say that I'm addicted to it but it's definitely a big part of my life. Drinking a cup or two in the morning is a great <u>pick-me-up</u> and with this coffeemaker that my girlfriend gave me, I can do it at home.

#### 词汇 Key Words

coffeemaker ['kofi,meikə] n. 咖啡机 reveal [ri'vi:l] v. 透露 sip [sip] v. 小口地喝 feel like (doing) sth. 想要(做)…… aficionado [ə,fɪʃə'nɑ:dəʊ] n. 狂热爱好者 pick-me-up ['pɪkmi:ʌp] n. 提神的东西

Describe an educational TV programme you've watched. You should say: what programme it is how often you watch it what type of people enjoy this programme and explain why this programme is educational.

I'm going to talk about a TV programme called *Modern English*. It's an English-teaching show and you can learn a lot of natural and useful phrases and words as well as sentence structures from it. I've been a huge fan of this show for about 2 years.

I watch this programme on a daily basis. It lasts 30 minutes every day, from 6:30 to 7:00, so no matter what I'm doing then, I will stop to watch the show.

What kind of people like watching it...well, people who want to master English are usually pretty fond of this programme. For instance, like me, my friend Jason is really into this show too. His dream is to be multilingual, but his English is not very good now, so in order to <u>be fluent in it</u>, he watches this show every single day.

I think this programme is very educational mainly because I can learn a lot of things from it. For example, I can learn many idioms, which are pretty interesting. Oh, last week, I learned the phrase "*under the weather*" which means "not feeling well". I find this idiom very useful and I even used it to talk with Jason the other day. Another reason is that I get to know a little about western culture as well by watching this show...

# 词汇 Key Words

be fluent in... 流利使用(某种语言)

under the weather 身体不舒服; 心情不好

Describe an unforgettable advertisement that you saw or heard. You should say: where you saw or heard it what kind of advertisement it was what the content of the advertisement was and explain how you felt when you saw or heard this advertisement.

I'm going to talk about an advert for a Chinese smartphone brand, Zhongxing. I don't think you've ever heard of it before, because it's not even popular in China. I saw this ad in a magazine on the plane. I was flying to Zhengzhou from Beijing and in order to pass the time, I began to read this magazine and then I saw this ad.

As for the content of this ad...well, it just talked about how good their smartphone was. I remember it saying something like it has <u>an ultra high-resolution display</u> and it has <u>a 13 or 15 megapixel camera</u>. Sorry, it's been a long time already, I can't remember very clearly. Oh, it also said that this smartphone has <u>500 hours stand-by battery life</u>, which really <u>shocked</u> me because I can't really imagine using my phone for that long without having to <u>charge</u> it.

Anyway, after I saw it, I thought this ad was pretty funny because it seems like Zhongxing's smartphone is much better than the iPhone. But the thing is, it's actually a lot cheaper. It only costs a little over 1,000 Yuan. It made me doubt its quality. As an iPhone user myself, I don't think I will ever buy anything like that.

### 词汇 Key Words

an ultra high-resolution display 一个超高清显 示屏 a 13 megapixel camera 一个一千三百万像素 的照相机 500 hours stand-by battery life 500 小时待机时间 shock [ʃok] v. 令……吃惊 charge [tʃɑːdʒ] v. 给……充电





Well, I'm going to talk about learning Japanese. I started learning this language three years ago, but I'm far from being fluent in it, so I will definitely keep learning.

I suppose what I would mainly do is try to watch as many Japanese movies as possible, because that would be a great way to <u>pick up</u> some really natural words and phrases. Plus, if possible, I would try to make some Japanese friends. If I could always talk with them, it would be much easier for me to master this language.

Where I would learn it...well, to be honest, I guess I could learn this language anywhere. As I said, watching movies would be my main method, so I don't think there would be a place where I couldn't do it, since as long as I *have an Internet connection*, I can watch a movie on the Internet no matter where I am.

I would like to keep learning Japanese primarily because I go to Japan on holiday from time to time and I've found that it's super difficult to <u>converse with</u> the people there in English. If I could speak Japanese, it would be a lot easier to <u>integrate with the locals</u> and understand their culture. Another reason is that I'm a huge fan of Japanese cartoons and my favourite is One Piece. It would be great if I could watch it without relying on the <u>subtitles</u>.

# ·词汇 Key Words

pick sth. up 学习……

have an Internet connection 有网络连接 converse with sb. 和某人进行沟通(= communicate with sb.) integrate with the locals 融入当地人的生活 subtitle ['sʌbtaɪtl] *n*. 字幕



Describe a small and successful company you know. You should say: what the company is called how you got to know it what kind of business it does and explain why you think this company is successful.

The company I'm going to talk about is called BC Camping. This company offers camping holidays on the outskirts of Beijing.

I got to know it two years ago. At that time, my nephew wanted to go on a camping holiday with me and so I searched for some information on the Internet. This is how I found the company.

What kind of business it does ... well, basically, you go with them to a mountainous region where

#### 雅思口语真经点纲

they have a campsite. Then, you can stay there for a couple of days. During your stay, there are many fun activities to do. For instance, if I'm not mistaken, each day *kicks off* with a sports match, like football or volleyball. Then, there are some interesting things for children, like poster competition, model making and so forth.

I suppose this company is pretty successful mainly because their staff are <u>well-qualified</u> and really <u>enthusiastic</u>. When you have a <u>request</u> or a <u>complaint</u>, they always <u>deal with</u> it immediately. I think another reason is that their activities really <u>meet people's demands</u>. I mean, nowadays, a lot of people are really busy with work and so they want to spend their weekends doing something fun with their children. BC Camping offers tons of activities that people can do with kids...

# 词汇 Key Words

on the outskirts of... 在……的郊区 mountainous region 山区 kick off 开始 well-qualified ['wel'kwolrfard] *adj.* 称职的; 合格的 enthusiastic [ɪn,θju:zɪ'æstɪk] *adj.* 热情的 request [rr'kwest] n. 要求 complaint [kəm'pleɪnt] n. 投诉 deal with sth. 处理某事 meet people's demands 迎合 / 满足人们的 需求

Describe a song that means something special to you. You should say: what this song is about when you listened to this song for the first time how often do you listen to this song and explain why you think it is special to you.

The song I'm going to talk about is called *One and Only*. In this song, a young man and a young woman are <u>on the verge of a breakup</u>, but the man doesn't want it to happen. He tells his girlfriend that he <u>is still madly in love with her</u> and she <u>means the world to him</u>.

I first listened to this song when I was still in secondary school. At first, I just thought it was pretty <u>catchy</u> and so I learned how to sing it. I know it will sound pretty embarrassing, but at that time, I <u>had</u> <u>feelings for</u> my deskmate. One day, I sang this song to her and she told me that she really loved it. I was on cloud nine when she told me so. Then, she became my girlfriend and we were together for about half a year until my mom found out about it. I was forced to <u>break up</u> with her.

Anyway, how often I listen to this song...well, I still listen to it now, but not as often as before because it's been so many years already and there have been many other songs that I've loved.

160

I think this particular song is really special to me mainly because I sang it to my deskmate then. You

know, she was my first girlfriend. Although I can't be sure I knew what love was then, I still had a really good time with her...

# 词汇 Key Words

on the verge of a breakup 在分手的边缘 be madly in love with sb. 疯狂地爱着某人 mean the world to sb. 对某人来说意味着一切 catchy ['kætʃɪ] adj. 朗朗上口的 have feelings for sb. 对某人有感觉 break up 分手

Describe an indoor game you played with	in your childhood.
You should say:	
what it was	
when, where and with whom you usu	
how you played it	
and explain why you liked this game.	ille one village sig 3dt falle komme for

I'm going to talk about a word game I used to play when I was a little child. It's <u>similar to</u> spelling bee, but it's not exactly the same.

I was about 7 or 8 years old when I was crazy about this game. I often played it with several of my classmates. Sadly, we're not <u>in touch</u> anymore. Well, we would often play it in my apartment because, you know, I'm proud to say that I was kind of the centre of our little group.

How we played this game...well, it's a word game, so we would try to come up with English words. I mean, for instance, I will say a word like "dog", and then the next person has to say something that starts with the letter "g", so maybe "girl", then the next says something like "love". Yeah, it's a very simple game but it was always a blast.

I really liked it primarily because it was a lot of fun. It may sound simple, but we just kept <u>cracking</u> <u>up</u> while playing it. Oh, I forgot to mention that whoever <u>lost a round</u> had to do something <u>ridiculous</u> such as learning to <u>bark</u> like a dog. Anyway, we always <u>had a ball</u> playing this game together.

161

# 词汇 Key Words

be similar to 和……类似 be in touch (with sb.) (和某人)保持联系 crack up 大笑 lose a round 输掉一局 ridiculous [rɪ'dɪkjələs] *adj.* 可笑的;荒谬的 bark [bɑ:k] u 狗叫 have a ball 玩得很开心 Describe an environmental law you would like to see in the future. You should say: what the law would be why the law is needed how this law would be enforced and explain how it would benefit the environment.

I hope that in the near future, car drivers would have to pay money to go into the city centre. This is the law I would like to see.

This law is needed primarily because the air in my hometown, especially in the city centre, is *awfully polluted*. I even have to wear a mask sometimes. I think this is because we have so many cars on the road. You know, if there's a big event *taking place* in Beijing, like the *military parade* a few years ago, the number of cars on the road is reduced to half and the air quality would be much better. So I suppose if we *imposed a congestion fee on drivers* if they drove into the city centre, there would be fewer cars going around and the air quality would certainly be improved.



How it would benefit the environment...well, as I said, if drivers were aware that they needed to *pay extra money*, they would probably think about taking the public transport like the bus or the subway. In this case, fewer cars would mean fewer *exhaust fumes*. The environment would *undoubtedly* benefit from this.

#### 词汇 Key Words

awfully polluted 严重污染的 take place 发生;举行<sup>4</sup> military parade 阅兵 impose sth. on sb. 将……施加于某人 congestion fee 拥堵费 pay extra money 支付额外的钱 exhaust fumes 汽车尾气 undoubtedly [**^n'dautrdli**] *adv.* 毫无疑问地

Describe a kind of weather you like. You should say: what it is where you usually experience it what you will do and explain why you like this kind of weather.

I'm going to talk about rainy weather which is my favourite.

I know many other IELTS candidates want to talk about sunny days because on a sunny day, you can

get out and about and do a lot of outdoor activities. However, the thing is I'm not a fan of the sunshine. I've always been crazy about the rain.

You know, on a rainy day, I can do quite a few things that are <u>pleasurable</u>. For example, the first thing that comes to mind is that if it's only <u>a sprinkle of rain</u> out there, I like to go to the <u>basketball court</u> on my university campus and play basketball alone, I mean, completely on my own, for about an hour or so. I believe many other people will consider this to be really weird and <u>goofy</u>. When I play basketball in the rain, I will <u>be</u>

drenched from head to toe. However, I don't care, because when I play it, I get a kick out of it. Another thing I like to do on a rainy day, especially when it's raining heavily out there is that I often sit on the balcony and do some reading. I find it pretty delightful when I watch the rain <u>trickling down the window</u> and listen to the <u>pitter-patter</u> of <u>raindrops</u>. It's just very <u>therapeutic</u>.



I think I'm crazy about the rainy weather mainly because...um, here is a word that I used about ten seconds ago, therapeutic. Especially when  $I_y$ sometimes feel a little <u>stressed out</u>, the sound of the raindrops just <u>puts me in</u> <u>a better mood</u> and <u>puts my mind at ease</u>.

# 词汇 Key Words

IELTS candidate 雅思考生 get out and about 出去走走 pleasurable ['pleʒərəbl] *adj.* 令人愉快的 (= enjoyable) a sprinkle of rain 小雨 basketball court 篮球场 goofy ['gu:fɪ] *adj.* 愚蠢的; 傻的 be drenched from head to toe 从头到脚湿透 get a kick out of sth. 从……中获得快乐 trickle down the window 顺着窗子流下来 pitter-patter ['pɪtə,pætə(r)] n. 噼啪声 raindrop ['reɪndrop] n. 雨点; 雨滴 therapeutic [,θerə'pju:tɪk] adj. 使人放松的 be stressed out 有压力的 put me in a better mood 令我心情变好 put my mind at ease 令我放松



I'm going to talk about the shared bicycles, which are a relatively new invention, but they've already

#### 雅思口语真经点纲

taken the country by storm. No matter which major city you go to, you can see many shared bicycles scattered around the city.

In terms of what they do...well, they just offer <u>an alternative mode of transport</u>. Shared bicycles are fairly easy to operate—you just find one, <u>scan the QR code, hop on</u> it and go. When you arrive at your destination, you can park the bike anywhere. It's super convenient.

I think this invention is extremely popular mainly because of its convenience. Like I said, they're everywhere, so you don't have to <u>make an effort to</u> find a bike. Plus, cycling is a good <u>workout</u>—it's really good exercise riding a bike from one place to another. At least, it's better than sitting in a cab for only 10 minutes, right?

I think <u>generally speaking</u>, people have positive opinions towards shared bicycles, but they do create a problem. Sometimes they look like <u>a mess</u> when there are so many of them in one small place. Perhaps there should be <u>some regulations put in place</u> by the government to deal with this problem.

#### 词汇 Key Words

take...by storm 风靡……

scatter around the city 分散在城市中 an alternative mode of transport 一种替代性的 交通方式 scan the QR code 扫描二维码 hop on (the bike) 跳上 (自行车) make an effort to do sth. 努力做某事 workout ['w3:kaut] n. 健身方式 generally speaking 总的来说 a mess 一片混乱的景象 put in place some regulations 推行一些规章 制度

1	Describe a sport you like that is a little expensive.
	You should say:
	what it is $\hat{x}$
	how much it usually costs
	who you usually do it with
*	and explain why you like to do this sport.

I'm going to talk about skydiving, which I think is one of the most thrilling sports on earth.

I'm not sure how much it costs in other countries, but...I did it in *Fiji*. You know, my wife and I went there <u>on holiday</u> and we skydived. It cost about 1,000 US dollars, so 7,000 RMB, I think. But <u>if we had</u> <u>gone higher</u>... you know, we jumped from a point of 10,000 feet and if we had jumped from 12,000 feet or 14,000 feet, it would have cost us more.

Who I usually do it with...well, honestly, like I said before, I've only done it once. I think skydiving is just <u>a once-in-a-lifetime experience</u>. You just have to do it once and <u>brag about</u> it your entire life. I did it with my wife. She is a <u>thrill-seeker</u>, a very <u>adventurous</u> person. I remember one of our <u>instructors</u> asked us whose crazy idea it was to skydive, I said it was hers. It was indeed.

I really love this sport mainly because it *gave me an adrenalin rush*; it was so exciting and I felt proud of myself. Plus, as I was saying, I can brag about it for the rest of my life now and I feel really good when I tell people I've done it before and they're very envious of me.

# 词汇 Key Words

skydiving ['skaɪdaɪvɪŋ] n. 高空跳伞 thrilling ['θrɪlɪŋ] adj. 刺激的,扣人心弦的 Fiji ['fi:dʒi:] n. 斐济 on holiday 度假

If we had gone higher, it would have cost us more 如果我们去更高的地方的话,费用会更高 a once-in-a-lifetime experience 一生仅有一次的 经历

brag about sth. 吹嘘某事



thrill-seeker [θrɪl'si:kə(r)] n. 寻求刺激的人 adventurous [əd'ventʃərəs] adj. 喜欢冒险的 instructor [ɪn'strʌktə(r)] n. 教练; 指导员 give me an adrenalin rush 让我肾上腺素飙升

Describe an interesting tradition in your country.	
You should say:	
what the tradition is	
when do people celebrate it	
how do people celebrate it	
and explain why it is an interesting tradition.	

The tradition, I mean, the festival I'm going to talk about is actually not a very special one and I believe a lot of other candidates also talk about it, but since it's indeed my favourite tradition and I really find it quite interesting, I'm just going to talk about it anyway. It's the Mid-Autumn Festival. It <u>originated</u> <u>from the Tang Dynasty</u>, which <u>dates back to 1,400 years ago</u>. People would have a huge celebration whenever there was a good <u>harvest</u> back then.

This festival is on August 15th, but of course, this is by the *lunar calendar*. So it means, it's just one day in September or October.

We get three days off then, so most people just go back to their hometown and have a <u>reunion dinner</u> with their family members. What's important about this dinner is that we eat mooncakes, which are round, kind of like the moon. But there's a new tradition now—like I said before, we have a three-day holiday, so many people seize the opportunity to go on short trips. This is actually what I did with my wife last year. We went to Tianjin, a city next to Beijing and we had a great time there.

Anyway, what I mainly like about this festival/tradition is that I get to eat a lot of mooncakes. Many people say they're *highly calorific*. Well, I know that, but I don't care, coz I just find them so tasty...

#### 词汇 Key Words

originate from... 起源于…… Tang Dynasty 唐朝 date back to 1,400 years ago 追溯到 1 400 年前 harvest ['hg:vɪst] n. 丰收 lunar calendar 阴历 reunion dinner 团圆饭 highly calorific 高热量的

Describe a change you would like to see in your local area. You should say: what the change would be who would be involved in making the change how it would be done and why you would like to see the change happen.

I would like to see more bikers in my local area. Basically every day, you hardly see anyone cycle to work in the streets near my home. Instead, there are too many cars and motorcycles which create a lot of noise and exhaust fumes.

Well, in order for the change to happen, *many parties* would have to be involved. First of all, the local

council would have to encourage people to cycle to work. They could build more places to leave our bikes safely. Currently, there are only a few places where people *park their bikes* and they usually worry that the bikes may be stolen. Also, if I cycled to work, I'd have to *go uphill* and on a hot day, I'd arrive at work pretty *sweaty*, so I think I'd need a shower somewhere at work. In this case, employers would need to be involved too.

I would like to see more people cycle mainly because that would mean there would be fewer cars on the road, so the traffic would be better. I'm really tired of having to wait in traffic for a long time every day. Plus, cycling is good for our health, so people would be fitter if they started cycling on a daily basis.



词汇 Key Words

many parties 多方 park one's bike 存放自行车 go uphill 上坡 sweaty ['swetr] adj. 出汗的 be tired of... 对……感到厌烦

Describe a historical event in your country.	
You should say:	
when and where it happened	
how you know it	
what happened	
and explain how you feel about this event.	

I'm going to talk about the only time when our men's national football team competed in the World Cup.

It happened in 2002, in June actually. That year, the World Cup was held jointly by Japan and Korea. Sorry, since it was so long ago. My memory's already a little <u>vague</u>, so I can't remember correctly in which country China played all its three matches.

I know this event because...um, well, I think this is pretty obvious because everyone in China knows about it. It was a really significant event. China had tried *for decades* to get into the World Cup, only to fail each and every time. But that year, we finally succeeded, so it was absolutely a big thing.

What happened...well, sadly, we lost all three matches and <u>got knocked out</u>. That's what happened, but even so, I was quite proud of my country. In fact, it was that event that made me <u>fall in love with</u> soccer and it's been an integral part of my life ever since then. Now, I often play on the <u>pitch</u> in my university. Soccer is such a fun and exhilarating sport and I always <u>get a buzz out of</u> it. I believe I'll keep playing soccer <u>for the rest of my life</u>.

# 词汇 Key Words

vague [**verg**] *adj.* 模糊的 for decades 几十年来 get knocked out 出局; 被淘汰 fall in love with... 爱上…… pitch [prtʃ] n. 足球场 get a buzz out of sth. 从……中得到快感 for the rest of my life 在我的余生中

(() Part 3 回答七大准则

- ◆ 准则 1: 观点不重要,不要因为过多思考观点而迟迟不作答,要在考官问题问完之后,立刻张 嘴说话。即使没有观点也要开始说英文,说出当时自己脑中出现的想法。
- ◆ 准则 2: 可以先告诉考官"题目很难""没有想过这个问题"等,然后对自己所表达的"题目很 难""没有想过"进行扩展 —— 为什么觉得题目难?为什么没有想过?事实上,当考生 谈论这些内容的时候,同样是在讨论题目。

- 准则 3:如果没有听清、听懂考官的问题,考生应立刻提问,请考官重复或解释题目。考生可以说: "I'm sorry, I'm not quite sure what...means." "I'm sorry, I don't get what you mean by..." "Excuse me. Could you please repeat that?" "Excuse me. Would you please explain that a little bit? I don't really understand." 等。
- ◆ 准则 4:考生在给出一个观点之后,应尽量对这个观点进行扩展,而非立刻罗列其他观点,给 出第二个、第三个观点。若想扩展一个观点,可以解释自己提出这个观点的原因或用 一个例子证明自己的观点等。
- ◆ 准则 5: 在 Part 3 中给出的例子最好是社会化、大众化的例子。个人的例子也是可以的,但是不 要在答案开始就立刻给出,也不要把个人的例子说得过长。
- ◆ 准则 6:不要担心考官不同意你的观点。Part 3 是"讨论",考官可以提出自己的想法、质疑, 甚至"反驳",但这不意味着考官会给你扣分。你的分数不是由观点决定的,而是由你 说出的英文决定的。
- ◆ 准则 7: Part 3 的很多题目与雅思写作 Task 2 的题目有很大的相似性,考生也可以通过写作范文 积累 Part 3 题目的观点、句型和词汇。建议在备考雅思口语 Part 3 时,搭配《雅思写作 真经总纲》中的写作范文一起学习。

# ((( Part 3 练习方法

- ◆ 方法 1: 学习本章 Part 3 例题的范例答案,积累词汇、句型、连接性表达。
- ◆方法 2: 反复朗读《雅思写作真经总纲》中的写作范文,积累词汇、句型、连接性表达。
- 方法 3:用《雅思写作真经总纲》中的写作范文进行复述练习,提升口语水平。复述不是背诵, 复述内容无须和原文完全相同。
- ◆ 方法 4: 听范例答案录音,改善发音;反复朗读范例答案,提高语感,并在此过程中掌握 Part 3 回答逻辑。
- ◆方法 5: 练习回答本章 Part 3 例题,练习时均以录音的方式进行:给自己的回答录音,答完一遍 之后,听自己的回答,把听到的词汇、语法、逻辑、发音等方面的问题记下来,并思考 把哪些词汇和句型替换成更地道的语言。再录一遍、再听、再录、再听。每道题至少录 音回答三次。
- ◆方法 6:找一个同样在准备雅思考试或英语口语较好的同学协助自己练习。让这位同学充当雅思考官的角色,提出问题,模拟雅思考试现场。
- ◆ 方法 7: 由于 Part 3 中出现的很多题目很可能是考官在现场根据考生的回答临时想出的,考生无 法完全预测考试题目。建议大家关注学为贵老师在微博上分享的一些 Part 3 题目。

注意:我们不建议大家完全背诵范俐答案。范俐答案是笱了帮助各位考生积累语言储备、学习 逻辑思路的。大家应尽量说出自己的回答。

下面,我们来学习一些 Part 3 高分答案。在这些答案中,有一些是"正常逻辑",即先给出观点、 然后通过原因和例子扩展观点;有一些是"不正常逻辑"——在最开始无法给出观点,而是通过说出 自己当时想法的方式与考官进行沟通、聊天,在后面给出了一些观点。

#### 第4章 口语素材大全

# (( Part 3 范例答案

# Work, careers, companies

Q Do you think it's important for people to take some time off work occasionally?

A: Yeah, definitely. I think it's vitally important for people to take some time off from time to time in order to relax. People these days,

especially those living and working in large cities tend to work nonstop, which puts a great deal of pressure on them. Taking a day or two off once in a while is extremely important. They can use the time to hang out with friends, bond with family members, go and catch a film or just stay home alone, chilling out. All these things help people relax.

#### 词汇 Key Words

vitally important 非常重要 (=extremely important) take some time off 休息一小段时间 work nonstop 不停地工作 put a great deal of pressure on sb. 给某人很大 压力 bond with sb. 和某人拉近感情 catch a film 去看场电影 ; chill out 放松

Should people make career choices based on money or what they're interested in?

*A:* Well, I think the most significant consideration should be whether what they will do is something they take pleasure from because only when they like what they do can they do well in their jobs. Personally, I'm fanatical about fashion design and I majored in that at university. Now, I find everything I do at work quite exciting and I derive a lot of fun every day. However, if, for instance, I were working at a bank, which I don't like at all, no matter how much money I make, I wouldn't feel happy. Of course, it would be great if what I do was both interesting and high-paying, but interest should come first.

#### 词汇 Key Words

the most significant consideration 最重要的考虑因素

be fanatical about sth. 非常热爱…… sth. should come first ……应该是第一位的

take pleasure from sth. 从……中得到乐趣(= derive a lot of fun from sth.)

Why do some people like their jobs while others don't?

A: I suppose there might be tons of reasons for this. First of all, perhaps they don't really get along





with their colleagues. In that case, they won't feel comfortable at all at work. For instance, if you walk into the office and everyone gives you a cold shoulder, I don't think you will like this job. Another reason might be perhaps some people think they're underemployed and deserve a better pay. So I guess it's likely that these people don't find what they do rewarding which will make them less enthusiastic about their jobs.

#### 词汇 Key Words

get along with 与……相处得好 give sb. a cold shoulder 对某人冷淡 be underemployed 大材小用的;工作不符合 自己能力的

deserve a better pay 应该得到更高的报酬

rewarding [**rr'wɔ:dɪŋ**] *adj.* 令人满意的;令 人有所收获的

be less enthusiastic about one's jobs 对工作 没有那么热情

# Q Is it difficult for university graduates to find a job in your country these years?

A: Well, I think it is. It's getting more and more difficult for them to land a job, especially a highpaying one. I guess it's due to our huge population. I mean, millions of students graduate and enter the job market, but there are not enough openings for them at companies. In addition to this, most of those who've studied at college think they're well-educated and so should only work at big companies or even multinationals; they don't want to work in small towns or rural areas. Very few university graduates would want to work as farmers, although it might pay even more than having a nine-to-five job in an office.

#### 词汇 Key Words

land a job 找工作 ( = find a job) enter the job market 进入工作市场 an opening 一个空缺的职位 well-educated ['wel'edju:kertrd] *adj.* 受过良好 教育的 multinational [,mʌltɪ'næʃnəl] n. 跨国公司 a nine-to-five job 一份朝九晚五的工作

#### In your culture, what kind of people can be leaders?

A: In my culture? Well, to be honest, I believe it's the same in any culture. First, this person needs to be a passionate person. He or she has to be enthusiastic about what they do every day. Only in this case will those who work for him or her be willing to devote themselves to whatever they do. I believe this is the most important quality a leader should have. Also, communication is crucial, so a leader has to be able to communicate ideas well. If they can't, the whole team might not be on the same page and this will definitely result in problems.

#### 词汇 Key Words

be willing to do sth. 愿意做某事 devote oneself to sth. 奉献 / 致力于…… on the same page 意见统一 result in sth. 导致……

# 🔇 Many women are earning more money now, does it mean they can be leaders?

A: Well, women can definitely be leaders. In fact, they can be great leaders. In our world today, many successful women occupy high positions in a company or even in a government and it's not uncommon at all. For instance, the Prime Minister of the UK, Teresa May, is a woman. My mom is also an example. She runs a small clothing company and there are over 100 people working for her. So, yeah, I don't think it's because women are earning more that they can be leaders. Men and women are the same and as long as you're capable, you can be a leader, regardless of your gender.

#### 词汇 Key Words

occupy a high position 占据高位 not uncommon 很普遍 capable ['keɪpəbl] adj. 有能力的 Fregardless of 不论 gender ['dʒendə(r)] n. 性别

Y

# Why do some people keep changing their jobs?

A: Well, I suppose there could be many reasons. First of all, perhaps it's because they're always unsatisfied with their salaries. When they change jobs, they want to find better-paid ones. Another reason could be that they find it hard to get along with their colleagues. Maybe it's because they have flawed personalities. In my case, if I get on well with the people I work with, I normally won't seek to find another job although my current one doesn't pay that well.

#### 词汇 Key Words

be unsatisfied with 对……不满意 better-paid ['betə(r) peɪd] *adj.* 薪酬更高的 flawed personality 有缺陷的性格 get on well with 和……相处融洽(=get along with) seek to do sth. 寻求做某事

What kinds of jobs are easy to get in foreign countries?

A: Um, this is a really weird question. To be honest with you, I thought about what questions I would possibly get on this speaking test and one of them was "What kinds of jobs are popular in China?". I never expected I'd get one like this. But um, let me think about it. In foreign countries? Well, since
I'm Chinese and Chinese is my mother tongue, I'd say that if I ever wanted to find a job in a foreign country, it would be pretty easy for me to become a Chinese teacher. I believe I would definitely have a competitive edge over foreigners who learned Chinese as a second language. And I'm convinced that it would be a high-paying job because with China becoming more and more influential on the world stage, an increasing number of foreigners are beginning to learn this language. I'm sure that I would have many students and therefore earn a decent salary.

词汇 Key Words

on the test 在考试中 (美式) in the test 在考试中 (英式) mother tongue 母语 a competitive edge 竞争优势 second language 第二语言 influential [,**ɪnflʊ'enʃl**] *adj*. 有影响力的 on the world stage 在世界舞台 an increasing number of 越来越多的 (= more and more)

earn a decent salary 挣一份不错的薪水

## What factors can affect a company's development?

A: Well, off the top of my head, I'd say it's extremely important that the leader of a company is able to make sensible decisions. For instance, they should make a wise decision as to whether the company should target a particular market or aim to make their products popular among people from all economic and social backgrounds. Another factor is cooperation. There has to be good cooperation and coordination between departments. Otherwise, the company won't develop well.

#### 词汇 Key Words

make sensible decisions 做明智的决定 target a particular market 瞄准一个特定市场 群体 aim to 目的在于 people from all economic and social backgrounds 具有不同经济和社会背景的人 coordination [kəʊ,ɔ:dr'neɪʃn] n. 协调

# What are the benefits of giving prizes?

A: Well, in my opinion, giving prizes to people who have worked extremely hard to win something makes them more motivated, so they will keep working hard. For example, the students who do well in an exam or competition can get a trophy or something and I believe they will make every effort to get it the next time too. In order to do that, what they have to do is keep studying as hard as they can. In addition, I think giving prizes to some people makes them good role models for others. In this case,

they set a good example for other people.

# 词汇 Key Words

motivated ['məutɪveɪtɪd] *adj.* 有动力的 do well in an exam or competition 在考试或比赛 中表现出色 trophy ['trəufɪ] *n.* 奖杯 make every effort to do sth. 竭尽全力做某事 role model 榜样 set a good example 树立好的榜样

#### (Q) How do companies reward employees for special achievements?

A: Well, I suppose there could be a couple of ways. First of all, managers might consider giving these employees a pay raise. This is the most obvious thing of course, but I believe it works the best. Although some members of staff say they don't work for money, instead, they try to get job satisfaction and a sense of achievement, money gives them more motivation I think. Plus, these employees could be given a promotion. This is exactly what happened to my dad. He got promoted to department manager after working out a way to increase sales by over 20 percent.

## 词汇 Key Words

give sb. a pay raise 给某人涨工资 members of staff 员工 (= employees) get job satisfaction 得到工作满足感 a sense of achievement 成就感 motivation [,məʊtr'veɪʃn] n. 动力 a promotion 升职 work out a way to increase sales 想出一种 提高销售额的方法

## What factors can affect a company's development?

A: Well, I believe loads of factors can contribute to a company's success or failure, but I might have to think a little. Um, first of all, I guess it's crucial that the leader of a company is always able to make smart decisions because in our world now where the competition is extremely fierce, a small mistake might result in the loss of a lot of money. Besides, I've always believed that it's of great importance that all members of staff get along with each other. Imagine you walk into your office and see everyone smiling to you, this kind of environment really fosters a good team spirit and this is necessary to the development of any company.

#### 词汇 Key Words

contribute to sth. 贡献; 促成; 有助于 fierce competition 激烈的竞争 all members of staff 所有员工 foster a good team spirit 培养一种良好的团 队精神

# Would you work for a small but successful company in the future?

*A:* Yeah, I guess I would, because, firstly, there's better work efficiency. I mean, if you wanna work on a project, you can go to your boss directly and tell him or her what you're trying to do and how the company can help you with that. However, if you work for a big organisation, this is probably impossible. Also, it feels great to work in a place where you're familiar with everyone. Honestly, if I worked in a huge multinational company where I hardly knew anyone, I wouldn't feel comfortable at all.

## 通汇 Key Words

work efficiency 工作效率 be familiar with 对……熟悉

# multinational company 跨国公司

# Family, friends, neighbours, roommates, socialising, teamwork

# What are the qualities of a good friend?

*A:* Well, first of all, I believe a good friend has to be reliable, because for example, if you are supposed to meet your friend for coffee, and then you get stood up, it feels really awful. Also, if you text your friend and he or she never replies, I

don't really think this is a good friendship. Plus, your friends and you have to see eye to eye on most things. You wouldn't stand it if your friend thought whatever you liked was ridiculous.

#### 词汇 Key Words

reliable [**rr'laɪəbl**] *adj.* 可靠的 be supposed to do sth. 本应该做某事 get stood up 被放鸽子 see eye to eye on sth. 在……上意见一致 stand sth. 容忍某事 ridiculous [rr'dɪkiələs] *adi.* 荒谬的

#### **(Q)** Are friends more important than family?

A: No, I don't think so. Friends come and go, but your family will be with you all the time, whether you like it or not. Maybe, for some reason, friends will betray you or something at some point in life. However, your family members will never do anything like that. Instead, they will always love you, care for you and be supportive of you, even if you're going through a rough patch. So, friends are never as important as family.





#### 词汇 Key Words

betray [br'trer] n 背叛 at some point in life 在人生的某个时刻 be supportive of 支持 go through a rough patch 经历一段困难时期

#### What do you think is the ideal time for people to get married?

A: Um, by "ideal time", do you mean at what age should people get married? Well, to be honest, I'm not quite sure about this. I know that in China, the age limit for people to tie the knot is...um...it's 22 or older for men and 20 or older for women. In some European countries, as far as I know, it's a lot younger—16 or even less. What I think is that if people get hitched way too early, they're actually not mature enough to handle some problems in life, like financial difficulties and raising children, and this might give rise to more serious problems in their marriage. So yeah, thinking about it, I think the Chinese age limit is pretty good.

词汇 Key Words

by..., do you mean...? 说到……, 你的意思是 ……吗? get married 结婚 (=get hitched = tie the knot) as far as I know 据我所知 way too... 太, 过于…… mature [mə'tfuə(r)] *adj*. 成熟的 handle ['hændl] v. 处理; 应对 financial difficulties 财务问题 raise children 抚养孩子 give rise to 导致; 引起 marriage ['mærrdʒ] n. 婚姻

#### Do you think expensive gifts are a sign of true friendship?

A: No, I don't think so. We always say "it's the thought that counts", and it's right—because not everyone can afford gifts that are pricey, but we can't say friendship doesn't exist between those who are not rich enough to buy them. Plus, some presents are still of great sentimental value even if they are dirt cheap. For example, I'm a big bookworm and I would love it if my friends gave me a good book on my birthday or some other special occasions.

# 词汇 Key Words

it's the thought that counts 心意最重要 pricey ['praisi] adj. 昂贵的 (= expensive) be of great sentimental value 有很大的情感价值 dirt cheap 很便宜 (= very cheap) a big bookworm 爱读书的人 on some special occasions 在一些特殊场合

In general, what do you think is the significance of giving gifts? A: Well, truth be told, I haven't given it a lot of thought. I think most people just follow the trend. You know, we give gifts coz every Tom, Dick and Harry does it. But I suppose, by giving presents to others, we make them happy and we can derive pleasure from it. I guess it's also a way of enhancing our relationship with whoever we give gifts to. You know, if I give my friend something he or she really likes, it's likely that we will be closer. It's the same with relatives and family members I think.

## 词汇 Key Words

truth be told 说实话 (= to be honest) I haven't given it a lot of thought 我没想过这 个 (= I haven't thought about it before) follow the trend 跟风 every Tom, Dick and Harry 每个人;所有人(= everyone) derive pleasure from sth. 从……中得到快乐 enhance our relationship 增进我们的感情 closer ['kləusə] adj. 更亲近的

Q Do you think it's important that people have a good relationship with neighbours?

A: Well, absolutely. It's of great significance that people get along with their neighbours—due to the fact that only when we have a good relationship with them can we create a sense of community, and this is really beneficial to everyone—because perhaps, sometimes, if we're in need and we might need others' help, those living next door could give us a hand. For instance, they can help us fix the toilet, babysit our children while we're away, take care of our pets and so forth. If we don't get on well with them, we might feel pretty helpless when something urgent happens.

#### 词汇 Key Words

a sense of community 社区的温暖、邻里之间 和睦的感觉 give sb. a hand 给予帮助(=help sb.) babysit children 替人临时照看孩子

in-need 需要帮助

Why are virtual communities becoming more and more popular nowadays?

A: Well, the reasons are manifold, I think. Firstly, since technology has come such a long way, it has become much easier for us to make friends online. We don't have to go to the trouble of going to a bar, a coffeehouse or a party to meet someone new. Instead, it can be done on the Internet. Secondly, some people are really into virtual communities because they can pretend to be someone that they are not and experience something they can't have in the real world. For instance, if a man is physically unattractive and poor, he can still claim that he is a charming guy by posting some pictures of other people. So, these are the reasons I can think of.

176

#### 词汇 Key Words

manifold ['mænɪfəʊld] adj. 多方面的 technology has come such a long way 科技取得 了很大发展

go to the trouble of doing sth. 不怕麻烦费心做 事 physically unattractive 相貌平平 charming ['tʃɑ:mɪŋ] *adj.* 有魅力的 post a picture (on the Internet) (在网上)发 布一张照片

**Q** Do you think there are any advantages to sharing an apartment with people who are not your family members?

A: Well, I've never really thought about it before. It's really hard to think of an advantage I think, because I suppose most people would like their roommates or say, flatmates to be family or friends. Maybe it's beneficial for people to stop being too reliant on their parents and start taking responsibility for themselves. Another advantage might be that they get to develop communication skills and it makes them more sociable—because when living under the same roof, people definitely have to interact with their flatmates and try to get along with them. If they don't, they will have a hard time living together.

# 词汇 Key Words

be reliant on sb. 依赖某人 take responsibility for sth./sb. 对某事 / 人负责 communication skills 沟通能力 sociable ['səʊʃəbl] *adj.* 善于社交的 live under the same roof 同住一个屋檐下 interact with sb. 和某人互动 have a hard time doing sth. 做某事很艰难、 不容易

What are the differences between doing something in a group and doing things alone? A: Well, off the top of my head, I'd say people might be more motivated in a group. No matter what they do, be it a sport or a project assigned by their teachers or employers, they know if they don't try their best, the whole team will not function to the full. In that case, the results might not be optimal and they might let others down. However, by contrast, when you're doing something on your own, you might feel the urge to slack off because no one is working side by side with you and you're likely to feel that it won't hurt if you don't give it your best shot.

#### 词汇 Key Words

be more motivated 更有动力的 no matter what..., be it...or... 不管怎样,无论 是……还是…… try one's best 尽最大努力 function to the full 充分发挥作用 optimal ['optɪməl] adj. 最理想的 on one's own 独自地

feel the urge to slack off 有松懈的冲动 work side by side 共同工作

# Transport, commuting

**Q** Do people in your country prefer to share public transport or do they prefer to use private transport?

A: As far as I'm concerned, most people are partial to taking the public transport. I think there are a couple of reasons for this. First of all, the public transport is extremely cheap in most cities. Take Beijing for example, it only costs several yuan to ride the subway. However, since the petrol prices are soaring, if you drive to work, it can really cost an arm and a leg. Another reason might be that

the traffic in large cities in China is awful, so it really drives people crazy if they use their own car. For this reason, if it's available, the subway sounds like a much better choice.

#### 词汇 Key Words

be partial to 喜欢 ( = like sth.) ride/take the subway 坐地铁 petrol prices 汽油价格 soar [so:(r)] μ 高涨 cost an arm and a leg 很贵 drive people crazy 令人发疯,把人逼疯

## Why do some people have to travel a long distance to work?

A: Well, um, it only takes me half an hour to get to my company, so I haven't given it a lot of thought. Well, I suppose, there could be many reasons. For starters, many people go to work in the city but live in the suburbs because housing prices are sky-high in the city. Besides, some parents live far away from work because they live in close proximity to their children's schools. This way, it's convenient for their children, but they have to travel a long distance every day. Honestly, I couldn't stand it if I had to drive for a long time to go to work. It would drive me up the wall if I had to do it on a daily basis.

#### 词汇 Key Words

in the suburbs 在郊区(注意复数形式) sky-high ['skar'har] adj. 超高的 in close proximity to 离……很近



it won't hurt 无妨

give it one's best shot 尽最大努力



Do you think the government should control the number of cars on the road?

*A:* Well, I think it should, if it's super congested on the road. If the government doesn't do anything, the traffic conditions will just keep worsening and an entire city will simply be a big parking lot. Take Beijing for example, every weekday, a certain percentage of cars are not allowed to be used, so there's less traffic and it's slightly better than if there weren't this policy at all.

# 词汇 Key Words

congested [kən'dʒestɪd] adj. 堵塞的 worsen ['wɜ:sn] v. 恶化; 变坏 parking lot 停车场 a certain percentage of cars 一定比例的车辆 less traffic 车辆较少

# Countryside and cities, accommodation, buildings

Would you like to live in a developed city with a high salary but polluted air?

A: No, absolutely not. I'd never consider anything like that, because I believe no matter how much money I make, health should always come first. Wait, hang on. I guess I'm being really hypocritical here coz I am living in a developed city which is awfully polluted. I live in Beijing which is definitely one of the wealthiest cities in China, but the air quality here hasn't been so good in the past few years. I guess my cop-out is that...um...I'm



### 词汇 Key Words

absolutely not 当然不 consider [kən'sɪdə(r)] v. 考虑 no matter... 无论…… come first 是第一位的 hang on 等会儿 hypocritical [,hɪpə'krɪtɪkl] *adj.* 虚伪的 awfully polluted 污染严重的 wealthy ['wellor] adj. 富裕的 cop-out ['kopaut] n. 借口 go up the social ladder 努力往社会上层爬 job opportunity 工作机会 room for advancement 发展空间 contradict sth. 和……相矛盾



# **(Q)** What are the advantages of living in the countryside?

A: Well, there are obviously a ton of advantages of living in the country and—the first one that comes to mind is that due to the absence of cars and factories...um...I think I may have exaggerated it a little bit...well, there are certainly some cars and factories in the countryside, but since there are not that many, people living in the country won't inhale a lot of toxic fumes. This is clearly one of the main advantages of country life over city dwelling. In Beijing, where I'm from, there are millions of vehicles running on the streets every day, which gives rise to our poor air pollution, and that's why a huge number of people are seriously considering moving away. Another benefit of country life is the slow pace of life. Time runs more slowly in the country, which doesn't make people feel under too much pressure. In the city, however, everyone tends to rush from one place to another and it's extremely stressful.

#### 词汇 Key Words

a ton of 很多

the absence of... 没有……;缺少…… exaggerate [**ɪg'zædʒəreɪt**] 业 夸张 inhale toxic fumes 吸入有毒气体 city dwelling 城市居住 give rise to 导致 pace of life 生活节奏 rush from one place to another 从一个地方 急忙赶到另外一个地方

#### What kind of people like city life?

A: Well, I believe most young people do because cities are more vibrant and dynamic and there are many bars, clubs, and tons of other places where young people can entertain themselves. However, by contrast, these places are far and few between in the countryside. Plus, career-minded people might be more into city life—coz cities provide more job opportunities and usually in those jobs, there's more room for promotion. For instance, if you want to pursue a career in advertising, I can't imagine living in the rural area being good for you.

#### 词汇 Key Words

vibrant and dynamic 活跃、有激情 entertain sb. 娱乐某人 far and few between 稀少的 career-minded people 有事业心的人 more room for promotion 更大的晋升空间 pursue a career 干一番事业

# What are some of the problems of living in the city?

A: Well, I think there are loads of problems. For starters, people are always under a huge amount of pressure—because the competition in the job market is extremely fierce and also, the cost of

living is sky-high in cities. Another problem is that there's a lot of pollution like air pollution and noise pollution. Millions of cars lead to these problems and they also give rise to traffic congestion. Personally, I'm not a big fan of living in the city, although there's not much I can do about it.

#### 词汇 Key Words

under a huge amount of pressure 有很大压力 fierce competition 激烈的竞争 job market 工作市场

cost of living 生活成本 lead to 导致 (= give rise to) traffic congestion 交通堵塞

# Why do so many people like to go to places with water?

A: Well, off the top of my head, it's absolutely because of the appeal of those fun activities that can be done on or near water. For instance, quite a lot of people adore swimming in the sea, snorkeling, kayaking, lying on the beach and so on. All of these things bring people a great amount of joy. I, for example, am a huge fan of snorkeling and I wouldn't miss any opportunity to go to a seaside city if I could snorkel there. Another reason could be the views. No matter where it is, as long as it's close to a lot of water, it's gorgeous.

## 词汇 Key Words

appeal [ə'pi:I] n. 吸引力 adore [ə'dɔ:(r)] v. 喜欢 ( = like) snorkeling ['snɒklɪŋ] n. 浮潜 kayaking ['kaɪækɪŋ] n. 划独木舟 / 皮艇 bring sb. a great amount of joy 给某人带来很 多的快乐 miss sth. 错过…… view [vju:] n. 风景 as long as 只要 gorgeous ['gɔ:dʒəs] n. 美丽的,漂亮的(= beautiful)

#### **Q** Are expensive buildings a waste of money?

A: Oh, that's something I've never thought about before. Um, expensive buildings... No, I don't think they're a waste of money because one building that comes to mind now is the Trump Tower in New York, built by the president of the United States, Donald Trump, of course. I bet it cost him millions of dollars to build it, but it absolutely generates huge revenues now. There are loads of brand-name stores in it, many hotel rooms and even a big number of tourists visit it every day, so it's definitely a profitable building. So yeah, thinking about this...I don't agree that expensive buildings are a waste of money.

# 词汇 Key Words

a waste of money 浪费钱的行为 come to mind 被想到 I bet 我相信

generate huge revenues 产生巨大的收益

```
loads of 很多
brand-name ['brænd<sub>.</sub>neɪm] adj. 名牌的
profitable ['prɒfɪtəbl] adj. 盈利的
```

# Hobbies, relaxation, lifestyles, sports, travel

Why do some people like taking photos and some don't? A: Um, well, off the top of my head, I don't suppose anybody doesn't like taking photos, coz photography is amazing, right? It allows us to have a record of where we have been and what we have done. I believe everybody loves snapping photos of interesting, unusual, weird things and beautiful scenery. I guess those who say they don't love photography must be people who don't adore taking



selfies. Perhaps they don't think they're photogenic and so don't want to be seen by others in a picture. In my opinion, it's important for these people to be more confident of how they look.

# 词汇 Key Words

take photos 照相 (= snap photos) have a record of... 有一个对于……的记录 where we have been 我们去过的地方 what we have done 我们做过的事情 unusual [ʌn'ju:ʒʊəl] *adj.* 不寻常的 take selfies 自拍 photogenic [ˌfəʊtəʊ'dʒenɪk] *adj.* 上相的

# Why do people take selfies?

A: Well, that's an interesting question and...actually, I just took a selfie and posted it on Weibo, the Chinese equivalent of Twitter, this morning. After posting, I even stuck around for a few minutes to see if I could get some likes and comments. So, what I think is that people take selfies because they wanna feel loved; they want to get people's attention. You know, not many people take selfies only for the sake of taking them; they're most likely to post them on social media, and if they get a lot of likes and comments, it definitely boosts their ego. Yeah, ego, that's the reason behind many things.

## 词汇 Key Words

the Chinese equivalent of Twitter 中国的 Twitter stick around 逗留; 停留 get people's attention 获得人们的关注 for the sake of... 为了…… social media 社交媒体 boost one's ego 提升某人的自信心/自尊

### Why do people like to take many photos when they're travelling?

A: Well, haha, this is a really interesting question. We really do take way more photos on a trip than we're at home or work. Um, I believe this is because what we do and see while travelling are totally different from what we do most of the time, and in order to have a record of these special things, we take a lot of photos. For instance, if you go on holiday to a seaside city, you can go swimming and snorkeling in the sea, watch the sunrise over the sea, lie on the beach and so on, which are not things you can do on a regular basis. Snapping photos of these things will help you record these memories.

词汇 Key Words

way more... 更多的…… go on holiday 去度假 sunrise over the sea 海上日出 lie on the beach 躺在海滩上

# Where do people go to relax in your country?

A: Well, it varies from person to person. Some people like to go to cafes to do some reading or just chat with their friends. You can see that there are more and more cafes both in cities and in the countryside and it's not uncommon for people to go and grab a cup of coffee and hang out there with friends. Others might like to go and sing karaoke, hang out at bars and clubs and go to the gym. I think it's a pretty positive trend that we have more ways to wind down after a busy day at work.

词汇 Key Words

grab a cup of coffee 买杯咖啡 sing karaoke 唱卡拉 OK a positive trend 一个很好的趋势 a busy day at work 忙碌工作的一天

#### What can people learn from travelling overseas?

A: Overseas travel can help people learn a bunch of things. For starters, travellers can get a glimpse of what the local life is like and therefore, it helps to understand why the locals do some particular things and we can learn what they do well in. If you travel to Japan, for example, you will see how people

recycle things and how Japanese are really polite to one another. Of course, we can learn these things from them. We can also pick up a bit of their language if we stay in another country for a relatively long period of time, say 2 or 3 months.

### 词汇 Key Words

a bunch of 一些 get a glimpse of 瞥见;稍微了解 recycle [**,ri:'saɪkl**] v. 回收 pick up a bit of their language 学习一点他们 的语言

for a relatively long period of time 在一段 相对长的时间内

What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of travelling in a tour group?

A: Well, off the top of my head, being looked after is definitely a huge benefit. When you go somewhere with a tour guide, not only will they introduce you to the place you're travelling to, they can also help you solve problems on the trip. For instance, if there's something wrong with the accommodation, food, etc, you can rely on them to sort things out. However, if you're travelling alone, you have no choice but to do these on your own, which is a big hassle. When it comes to disadvantages, I'd say, you don't get to do all you want in a group. You always have to follow the guide and it lacks a bit of flexibility.

## 词汇 Key Words

be looked after 被照顾 introduce you to a place 向某人介绍一个地方 rely on sb. 依靠某人 sort things out 解决问题 a big hassle 一个大麻烦 lack a bit of flexibility 缺少一点灵活性

# Entertainment, celebrities, role models

**Q** Do you think entertainment will be mainly home-based in the future?

*A*: Yeah, I do think so. This is mainly because of the rapid development of the Internet, which is responsible for a lot of what we do for fun. For instance, we have websites like iQIYI and Youku where we stream all kinds of videos. This is what a large number of people do for pleasure these days. Additionally, virtual reality





technologies are progressing pretty fast too. I went to a VR centre a couple of weeks ago and had a ton of fun there playing games. I believe we'll be able to buy our own VR devices in the future and play those fun games at home.

#### 词汇 Key Words

rapid development 快速发展 be responsible for sth. 是……的原因; 促成…… stream videos 在线看视频 for pleasure 为了消遣 ( = for fun) virtual reality 虚拟现实(=VR) progress ['prəugres] n. 进步 have a ton of fun 玩得很开心 device [dɪ'vaɪs] n. 设备

# **Q** How do people become famous in your country?

A: Well, people become famous in various ways, and um, I don't really know where to start. Um, for starters, a lot of people who wanna become famous overnight take part in talent shows, like *The Voice of China, China's Got Talent* and so on. If they're indeed super talented and are great singers or actors or comedians, they may rise to stardom in an instant. Another thing I can think of now is that athletes in different fields train really hard for years in order to win a medal at the Olympics. Those who really win can grab a lot of attention nationwide and even worldwide. Sun Yang is a good example here. He's a fantastic swimmer that specialises in freestyle and um, I'm not sure about the details, but I think he won a couple of medals at the London Olympics and everybody in China knows him now.

## 词汇 Key Words

in various ways 通过不同的方式 for starters 首先 become famous overnight 一夜成名 talent show 选秀 rise to stardom 成名 in an instant 迅速 another thing I can think of 我能想到的另外 一件事 for years 多年 medal ['medi] n. 奖牌 the Olympics 奥运会 (= the Olympic Games) grab a lot of attention 吸引很多注意力 nationwide [,neɪʃn'waɪd] adv. 在全国范围内 worldwide ['wɜ:ldwaɪd] adv. 在全球范围内 specialise in... 专攻…… freestyle ['fri:staɪl] n. 自由泳 a.couple of 两三个

#### **Q** What are the disadvantages of being famous?

A: Oh, it has loads of disadvantages and the first one that comes to mind is that you can't get a break,

ever. What I mean is that, of course, you go to work and act in a movie or record a song, but that's not it. Even when you're off work and going shopping or grabbing a coffee, you may be recognised by your fans and they run after you and want to get your autograph or take pictures with you. So yeah, being a celebrity is extremely tiring and stressful. In addition to this, you don't know who your real friends are. Perhaps the person that you're very close to today will reach out to a gossip magazine and spill your beans tomorrow. I can't remember the name of a singer, but one of his so-called friends revealed that he was gay. That's something he didn't want others to know, but it became major news and many of his fans turned their backs on him and he ended up becoming depressed.

# 词汇 Key Words

loads of 很多 get a break 休息; 停歇 be off work 下班 grab a coffee 喝杯咖啡 be recognised 被认出来 autograph ['o:təgra:f] n. 亲笔签名 tiring ['tarərɪŋ] adj. 令人感到疲倦的 stressful ['stresfl] adj. 给人以很大压力的 be close to sb. 和某人很亲近 gossip magazine 八卦杂志 spill the beans 泄密 reveal [rɪ'vi:l] u 泄露 turn one's back on sb. 抛弃某人 end up 最终; 到头来 depressed [dɪ'prest] adj. 抑郁的

#### (Q) What kinds of people can become role models?

A: Off the top of my head, I think those people who are extremely hard-working must be very good role models. In my opinion, diligence is the most important quality in a person and no matter what someone wants to achieve, he or she has to work hard. The person I really look up to is Jackie Chan, who I'm sure you know. He just received an honorary Oscar award for his contributions to the film industry. I believe the main reason he's become so well-known and respected today is that he worked incredibly hard. Honestly, compared to him, a lot of actors and actresses now really lack the kind of work ethic that he has, so they just can't be good role models.

## 词汇 Key Words

hard-working ['hɑ:d'wɜ:kɪŋ] *adj.* 刻苦努力的 (=diligent) diligence ['dɪlɪdʒəns] *n.* 勤奋 quality ['kwɒlətɪ] *n.* 品质 achieve [ə'tʃi:v] *v.* 达成 look up to 敬仰 contribution [,kontrr'bju:ʃn] n. 贡献 respected [rr'spektrd] adj. 受人尊敬的 incredibly [ɪn'kredəblɪ] adv. 难以置信地 lack [læk] y. 缺乏 work ethic 职业道德 (努力工作的精神)

186

# Internet, technology

#### I How can people find reliable friends online?

A: Um, honestly, I believe the answer is "They can't". The online world is very different from the real world that we live in. You know, in the real world, if we want to make friends, we can go to a bar or party or any other place where



we can meet various people. We can see others in person and make some sort of judgment as to whether these people are reliable or not. Although this kind of judgment may not be 100% accurate, it's still much better than making friends online. I mean, on the Internet, we might assume that we're chatting with a 20-year-old girl, but it might turn out that it's actually a 50-year-old pervert. So yeah, I just don't think it's possible to find reliable friends online.

# 词汇 Key Words

be different from... 和……不同 meet various people 遇到不同的人 in person 当面 as to 至于,关于 reliable [**rt'laɪəbl**] *adj.* 可靠的 accurate ['ækjərət] *adj.* 准确的 assume [ə'sju:m] v. 认为 turn out 结果是 pervert ['p3:v3t] n. 变态

#### Internet and books, which do you think provides useful learning materials?

A: Internet and books...well I believe they're both very valuable things that help people learn, a wide range of things actually. As for books, they are without a doubt the most important source of information. Our human civilisation has been handed down from generation to generation through books. But at the same time, we shouldn't neglect the importance of the Internet. An example comes to mind now. In China, a very popular website is Wangyi Open Class which provides people with tons of valuable and precious learning resources. We even have access to classes from prestigious universities in the United States, the UK and Australia. So yeah, I believe that books and the Internet are both essential in helping people learn in this day and age.

#### 词汇 Key Words

valuable **['væljʊəbl]** *adj.* 有价值的 a wide range of things 很多东西 without a doubt 毋庸置疑 source of information 信息来源 human civilisation 人类文明 be handed down from generation to generation 一代一代传下来 have access to sth. 能够获得……

in this day and age 在当今时代

prestigious [pre'stɪdʒəs] adj. 有名望的

# Q How technology has changed our lives ?

A: Well, off the top of my head, I wanna give you an answer that you probably haven't heard before haha. The technology has been improving rapidly over the past couple of decades and because of that, we spend...or um...I suppose a better way to put it would be we waste a lot more money on hightech stuff, either out of our own will, or because we're kinda forced by the trend. A good example would be the iPhone. Apple releases a new iPhone every year, or even two, and in order to always look stylish, whenever a new model hits the market, some people go and buy it. In fact, a red iPhone just came out several days ago and um, it's completely identical to the ones that were unveiled last September, except this new one is red. I bet a lot of people will go to the Apple store and buy it in spite of the fact that they already have several iPhones in their possession.

## 词汇 Key Words

rapidly ['ræpɪdlɪ] *adv.* 很快地 over the past couple of decades 在过去的二三十 年中 a better way to put it 一种更好的表达的方式 high-tech stuff 高科技的东西 out of one's own will 出于自愿 trend [trend] n. 趋势,潮流 release [rɪ'li:s] v. 发布 stylish ['starlɪʃ] *adj.* 时尚的 model ['mɒdl] *n.* 型号 hit the market 上市 ( = come out) be identical to... 跟……一样 unveil [,ʌn'veɪl] v. 公布; 使……公之于众 in spite of the fact that... 即使…… in one's possession 拥有

# What are some problems that people face on the Internet?

A: Well, the first problem that comes to mind is something that we see every day and everywhere— Internet trolling. I have no idea why this is so prevalent now, but you definitely see it in all kinds of places online. In my country, the most popular social networking site is Weibo, the Chinese equivalent of Twitter, and under each and every one of those popular posts, you see tons of vicious comments. For instance, I saw one comment calling a new-born baby extremely ugly yesterday and um...of course, this guy got what he deserved. Many people condemned him and said he looked like a pig as well. But then again, that's also trolling.

#### 词汇 Key Words

prevalent ['prevələnt] *adj.* 普遍存在的;盛行的 social networking site 社交网站 equivalent [**r'kwīvələnt**] *n.* 相等的东西;对应物 vicious ['vɪʃəs] *adj.* 恶毒的 comment ['kɒment] *n.* 评论 a new-born baby 一个刚出生的小孩 deserve [dɪ'zɜ:v] ν. 应得 condemn [kən'dem] ν. 谴责 but then again 然而,不过

What electronic devices and household appliances do people use now?

A: Oh, we use tons. As for electronic devices, we use the computer and the smartphone and they're like an essential part of our life now. Also, it's not uncommon for us to use some tablets to play games and read and stuff. Household appliances...well, there are loads of them, like the washing machine, the dishwasher, the refrigerator and...I could simply go on and on and on. I think these machines and devices have improved our lives dramatically and everything is super convenient now.

#### 词汇 Key Words

electronic device 电子产品 tablet **['tæblət]** n. 平板电脑 household/home/electrical appliance 家用电器 dishwasher ['dɪʃwɒʃə(r)] n. 洗碗机 improve sth. dramatically 使……大幅提高

# Do you think teachers will be replaced by technology in the future?

A: No, I can't agree with those who hold this view—because I believe there's no substitute for the guidance of a good teacher. Traditionally, teachers and students interact with each other face to face and teachers can see whatever is going on in the classroom. If they realise that a student is having difficulty making sense of what they teach, they can either stop to explain everything or tutor this student in person later. I don't think technology can do what I described just now.

#### 词汇 Key Words

there's no substitute for sth. 没什么能替代…… interact with sb. 和某人互动

have difficulty doing sth. 做某事有困难 make sense of sth. 弄懂……的意思

# Children, young people, old people

**(Q)** Do you think it's beneficial for children to take part in group activities?

A: Yeah, absolutely. I'm quite convinced it's good for them and there are loads of benefits. For starters, the most evident one would be that children are more likely to make friends in a group. Another benefit I can think of is that they can develop social skills from an early age. We



need to deal with people from all walks of life on a daily basis and I think it's good if children can hone their skills as early as possible. For example, when kids play football, not only should they be able to play well as an individual, they're also required to communicate effectively with teammates. This, I believe, is pretty beneficial to them.

# 词汇 Key Words

develop social skills 培养社交技能 from an early age 从小 deal with people from all walks of life 和各行各 业的人打交道 hone their skills as early as possible 尽早磨 炼他们的技能

#### What are the benefits of team sports for children?

A: Well, there are tons of benefits of course, and one of them is that team sports train children to cooperate with others. This is extremely important in today's world. Everyone, including children, tends to be egocentric in some way, but their "my way or the highway" attitude will have to stay in check when they're doing a team sport like soccer, basketball or hockey. Additionally, in order to help children improve at whatever team sport they're engaged in, parents need to spend time with them to help them practice, and I believe this is a good opportunity for the whole family to bond.

# 词汇 Key Words

train [treɪn] » 训练 cooperate [kəʊ'ɒpəreɪt] » 合作 egocentric [,egəʊ'sentrɪk] *adj.* 以自我为中心的 in some way 在某个 / 某些方面 my way or the highway 顺我者昌, 逆我者亡; 非照我的意思去办不可 stay in check 加以控制 be engaged in 从事;参与 bond [bond] v. 增进感情



**Q** Are there any differences between old people and young people when it comes to travelling?

A: Sure, there are definitely tons of differences between them. For starters, when young people choose to go travelling somewhere, it's more likely that they will go on their own instead of signing up for a tour group—because most young people would like the trip to be challenging and full of excitement. If they go with a tour group and a tour guide, they might not feel the freedom they'll have when travelling alone. Old people tend to travel with others. They don't have to think too much about accommodation and flights and so on. These things might prove to be a hassle for them if they don't often use the Internet. Apart from that, young people might want to go to places off the beaten track, whereas the old tend to want to go to key tourist destinations, I think.

# 词汇 Key Words

go on one's own 自己去 sign up for a tour group 报名参加旅行团 a hassle 一件麻烦事 places off the beaten track 人迹罕至的地方 whereas [weər'æz] conj. 然而(用在句中) key tourist destination 重点旅游景点

#### Why don't young people like educational programmes?

A: Well, firstly, I'd like to point out that not all young people don't like educational shows, coz I, for one, am crazy about a couple of programmes that teach spoken English, and also, quite a few of my friends are into watching documentaries. But it's fair to say that the majority of young people are not fans of these kinds of programmes. I suppose this is because what they do on a daily basis is be educated or they've just left school or university, and therefore they still remember vividly those hard days sitting in a classroom, busy learning or preparing for exams. In fact, I remember thinking to myself "I don't ever wanna study anymore" the very day I graduated from university. The whole year after that, I was so addicted to reality shows and game shows. It was two years later that I realised that I had to keep learning in order to stand out at work.

#### 词汇 Key Words

point out 指出 for one 作为其中一个;举例来说 it's fair to say... 这么说并不过分;说句公道话 the majority of... 大多数…… be educated 受教育 remember vividly 清楚地记得 (be) busy doing sth. 忙于做某事 be addicted to... 对……上瘾 reality show 真人秀 stand out 杰出; 突出

注意:上述答案中的"what they do is be educated..."中,be 动词骨面是 do,be 动词后面可 以使用动词原形,也可以使用 to do,但 native speakers (以英语苔母语的人) 使用动词原形的情况 更多。例此 "All you do is eat." "All I wanna do is take a nap." "What I'm going to do is note down a few details." 等。

# () How do you think the problem of youth crime could be tackled?

A: Well, that's a tough question. Um, in my opinion, the fundamental solution to any social problem is education. Of course, people would claim that one effective approach to tackling youth crime is a much stricter system of penalties and punishments...well, that might work, but we really have to seriously think about how to prevent young people from committing crimes at all rather than only about punishing them after offences so that they don't do the same thing in the future. As for education, we should do two things. One is to inform young people about the dangers of committing crimes and the other is to equip them with the sufficient knowledge and skill to find decent jobs and earn enough money to live good lives. I believe if these things are done well, youth crime could be dramatically reduced.

#### 词汇 Key Words

tough [tʌf] *adj.* 困难的 fundamental [,fʌndə'mentl] *adj.* 根本的 one approach to doing sth. ……的一个方法 tackle ['tækl] v. 解决 strict [strɪkt] *adj.* 严格的 work [w3:k] v. 起作用 offence [ə'fens] n. 违法行为 inform sb. 告知某人 equip sb. with sth. 使某人具备…… sufficient [sə'fɪʃnt] adj. 足够的 decent jobs 体面的工作 dramatically [drə'mætɪklɪ] adv. 显著地

# Why do young people tend to waste money?

A: Well, in my view, it's not that young people often waste money on purpose. They do spend a lot and splurge on some things occasionally because they want to live in the present by trying out fun things and having great times. When you're in your 20s, you certainly want to enjoy yourself by partying, singing karaoke, travelling, so on and so forth, and these things are usually very costly. So, as I was saying, young people don't want to waste money; they just end up spending a lot on things that they believe can bring them a great amount of joy.

100

#### 词汇 Key Words

on purpose 故意 splurge on sth. 在……上花很多钱 live in the present 活在当下 try out... 尝试…… in one's 20s 在某人二十多岁的时候 party ['pa:tr] v. 参加派对 so on and so forth 等等 costly ['kostlɪ] adj. 昂贵的 (= expensive) as I was saying 就像我刚才说过的 end up doing sth. 最终……; 以……告终 joy [dʒɔɪ] n. 快乐

# How to teach elderly people new technology?

A: Um, well, off the top of my head, I really want to say that it's extremely difficult to teach old people new things, let alone technology, which is generally harder to learn than many other things. This is because senior citizens have lived their entire lives doing the things that they're used to, that they're familiar with. So most elderly people are reluctant to learn new things. Thinking about it, if we want to teach old people new technology, it's crucial that we get them to understand it's necessary to learn it. For example, my mom only agreed to learn to use WeChat, the Chinese equivalent of WhatsApp, because I told her that I would be on it all the time, and she could send me text messages and voice messages anytime she wanted. If it hadn't been for that, I suppose she still wouldn't be able to use WeChat today.

#### 词汇 Key Words

let alone 更不用说 senior citizens 老人(=elderly people=old people) be used to sth. 习惯某事 be familiar with sth. 熟悉某事 be reluctant to do sth. 不情愿做某事 crucial ['kru:ʃl] *adj.* 至关重要的 ; text message 文字信息 / 短信 voice message 语音信息

# Food

#### Are there many vegetarians in your country?

A: Well, yeah I think so. Although there are not many vegetarians around me, I mean, only two of my friends are, the fact is, I know more and more people decide to eat a vegetarian diet nowadays. I guess this can be seen from the increasing number of vegetarian restaurants in China, especially in large cities, where people are



generally better-off and more open-minded about this special kind of diet. Around my neighbourhood, for instance, three vegetarian restaurants have opened in the past year and they're all pretty popular.

#### 词汇 Key Words

more and more 越来越多的 (= an increasing number of)

eat a...diet 吃一种……的饮食 sth. can be seen from... 从……中能够看出…… better-off ['betə(r)'of] *adj.* 较富裕的 open-minded ['əʊpən'maɪndɪd] *adj.* 思想开 明的 in the past year 在过去的一年

# Why do you think some people choose to be vegetarians?

A: Well, I suppose the reasons are manifold. The first one that comes to mind is some people consider only eating vegetables healthier—because such a diet may reduce the risk of diseases like cancer. Also, it's believed by some that animals shouldn't be killed for food. My mum, for example, is a Buddhist and she thinks animals and humans are equal and killing and eating them is morally wrong.

# 词汇 Key Words

consider sth. healthier 认为……更健康 reduce the risk of diseases like cancer 降低患癌 症这样的疾病的风险 be killed for food 被杀供人食用 Buddhist ['budɪst] n. 佛教徒 morally wrong 道德上错误的

# Why do you think fast food is popular nowadays?

A: Well, as far as I'm concerned, first of all, it might be because most people today, especially those living in the city are always in a hurry, so they don't have enough time to go home and spend a couple of hours cooking a decent meal and eating. Another reason might be that fast food just somehow appeals to people, especially children and teenagers because of all the sweet stuff. Actually, I'm not quite sure whether this is the reason, but take me for example, I used to have a sweet tooth when I was a child. So did many of my little friends. We always went to the Mcdonald's and KFC together.

#### 词汇 Key Words

in a hurry 急匆匆的 a decent meal 一顿不错的饭 appeal to sb. 吸引某人 have a sweet tooth 喜欢吃甜食

# How do you think the way we eat will change in the future?

A: Well, how do I think...Honestly, I've never thought about it before...I suppose we will eat more and more junk food like hamburgers, French fries, hot dogs and so on—because with a great number of people flocking to cities, the competition in the job market is gonna be more and more fierce. In that case, we'll find it harder and harder to spare time to enjoy cooking. Some people might think that if they spend too much time eating, they'll probably lag behind those who only have a burger for lunch and then go back to work. Well, this is only my assumption. Hopefully, it'll never happen.

#### 词汇 Key Words

flock to 涌向 lag behind 落后 assumption [ə'sʌmpʃn] n. 猜想

# Study, language, education, skills

# Q Do you think students need to relax when they study?

A: You're asking whether they need to relax when they study or after they study? (考官 回答) When they study. Well, in my opinion, when students are studying, they shouldn't feel too relaxed—because if they are, they won't be able to focus on what they do and the results won't be satisfying. However, after a student has studied for some time, he or she definitely deserves a rest and needs to do something to unwind. This will help the student study more productively.



#### 词汇 Key Words

satisfying ['sætɪsfaɪɪŋ] adj. 令人满意的 deserve a rest 应该休息

productively [prə'dʌktɪvlɪ] adv. 高效地

# Why do more and more Chinese people go and study abroad?

A: Haha, I sure know a lot about this coz I'm taking this IELTS test in order to go and study in the UK. I believe one of the fundamental reasons is that it's a great opportunity for people to be immersed in a foreign language, especially English, because most Chinese students choose to study in English-speaking countries like the UK, the United States, Canada and Australia. Being surrounded by this language allows them to pick it up more easily and quickly. On top of that, the overall experience of living and studying in a foreign country, absorbing another culture and acquiring another language, like I mentioned earlier, will all set those students apart from other people when they're trying to find jobs. My cousin, for example, studied in Canada for three years and it didn't take him long to land a well-paid job after returning to China. I hope it'll be the same for me when I come back.

# 词汇 Key Words

be immersed in... 沉浸在……中 be surrounded by... 被……所包围 on top of that 除此之外 absorb [əb'sɔ:b] v. 吸收 acquire [ə'kwaɪə(r)] » 获得 set sb. apart 使某人显得突出;使某人显得 与众不同 land a well-paid job 找到一份薪水高的工作

#### **(Q)** Is it important to learn a foreign language?

A: Well, to be honest with you, I believe it's crucial to learn English in today's world. Learning other languages is not an absolute must if you're not particularly interested in it or if you won't work or study in the country where that language is spoken. I find English extremely important primarily because it's the global lingua franca and it's widely spoken in the whole world. For instance, if you travel to another country, you can use English to converse with the local people. Plus, English is

of great importance when you're doing business with a foreign company. Another reason is that American culture is so dominant across the world now and if you don't understand English, watching American movies and listening to American music will not be as enjoyable.

# 词汇 Key Words

an absolute must 一个必不可少的条件 the global lingua franca 世界通用语言 dominant ['dominent] adj. 占支配 / 统治 地位的

Q How can people learn a language if they don't live in the country where it's spoken?

A: Well, there are many ways to learn a language. Firstly, watching movies and TV programmes is quite effective. I've been learning English for over 10 years and all I do is just watch an American movie and then repeat all the lines over and over again. In my opinion, it's one of the best ways because I've improved dramatically since I started doing it. As well as this, you can always find native-speakers who live in your country and practice with them.

#### 词汇 Key Words

effective [**I'fektɪv**] adj. 有效的 repeat all the lines over and over again 不断重 复合词 improve dramatically 大幅提高

#### 🔇 What do you think is the ideal age for learning a foreign language?

A: As early as possible! It's scientifically proven that children learn language much faster and a lot more easily than adults. I believe this is because kids are better at imitating sounds and so they pick up pronunciation faster than older people. Since pronunciation is a major part of a language, children have their natural advantage in learning a foreign tongue over adults. Take for example my cousin, who speaks English like a native speaker. She is so good at this language because she started off super young. When she was a kid, she was exposed to this language coz she watched English cartoons every day. I wish I had been the same...

# 词汇 Key Words

be scientifically proven 被科学证明的 imitate sounds 模仿声音 / 发音 a major part of sth.....的重要组成部分 have advantage over... 相对于……更有优势 tongue [tʌŋ] n. 语言 take for example... 例如(=take...for example) be exposed to... 接触…… Do you think parents should force their children to learn musical instruments?

A: No, obviously not. Parents shouldn't force their children to do anything. Wait, sorry, I take that back. If it's Chinese, math or English, if children don't want to learn these subjects, then they should be forced to spend time on them, because they're all compulsory subjects that allow people to survive in today's world, in any workplace. However, as for music, some people are born to be musicians, whereas some just don't have a musical ear. For them, it's simply a waste of time to learn music or musical instruments. They should put in the time to learn the things they like and do well in.

## 词汇 Key Words

obviously not 显然不是 I take that back 我收回刚才的话 workplace ['w3:kpleɪs] n. 工作场合 as for 至于 be born to... 生来就有 have a musical ear 擅长音乐,有音乐天赋 a waste of time 浪费时间

Why do some parents want their kids to study at home?

A: Well, honestly, not a lot of parents in China do this, so I'm not quite sure if everything I'm gonna say is correct, but um, off the top of my head, I suppose it might be because their kids don't get along with other students. Perhaps they just can't fit in with all the other kids at school. Another possible reason I can think of is that some parents are not quite satisfied with the education at school. I guess this might be the primary reason if some parents did teach their children at home.

#### 词汇 Key Words

fit in with sb. 和某人相处融洽 be satisfied with 对……感到满意 the primary reason 首要原因

**(Q)** Do you think high school students should learn skills that will be useful in the workplace?

A: Well, no, I don't think so. It's because high school should be the time when students acquire basic knowledge about different aspects of our life, such as chemistry, biology, history and geography. It should be until college when they learn the skills that will be useful in the workplace. What students learn in high school should be the foundation of everything they learn in college. Without proper and sufficient preparation at high school, they might not be able to learn practical things well later. For example, if a student wants to major in mechanical engineering, he or she has to learn math well at high school.

#### ion Key Words

basic knowledge about different aspects of our life 关于我们生活不同方面的基础知识 foundation [faun'deɪʃn] *n.* 基础 proper and sufficient preparation 适当和足够的 准备 major in mechanical engineering 主修机械 工程

#### 🔇 What kinds of skills do you think are the most useful in every life?

A: Well, the first thing that comes to mind is the skill of how to use the computer. The computer is an essential part of our lives and we can't live without it. We use it when we work, when we study. It's also used by people to search for information and we can also do many things online in order to wind down. It's necessary in every aspect of our life. Apart from that, communication skills are also extremely important—because we're in a society where we always have to socialise and interact with others. If we are not able to communicate with people properly, then a great amount of work can't be done.

#### 词汇 Key Words

can't live without it 生活离不开它 wind down 放松 in every aspect of our life 在生活的每个方面 communication skills 沟通交流能力 socialise [**'səʊʃəlaɪz]** v. 社交 interact with sb. 与某人互动

# Emotions, changes, experiences

#### **Q** Why do people get nostalgic?

A: Oh, that's a very interesting question. I had thought about it before, but I couldn't think of a reason, until one day, I read a book saying all human beings have this innate ability to gradually forget

sad things over time. Everyone experienced sorrows and hurtful things, but we've forgotten most of them, and what we do remember are those joyful moments. The bad things that happen now and have happened recently, we remember them very clearly, so we naturally believe that we suffer more than we did before. This is why people tend to be nostalgic, I think.

# 词汇 Key Words

nostalgic [no'stældʒɪk] adj. 怀旧的 think of a reason 想到一个原因

innate [**r'neɪt**] *adj*. 与生俱来的 gradually ['**grædʒʊəlɪ**] *adv*. 逐渐地



over time 随着时间的推移 hurtful ['h3:tfl] adj. 伤感情的 joyful ['dʒɔɪfl] adj. 令人开心的

### Q In what situations do people tell white lies?

A: One situation that comes to mind is when someone gets a new haircut and it doesn't look very good. Most of the time, friends just tell this person that their hair looks beautiful. People do this because they don't want to hurt others' feelings. Plus, we often tell children that their dreams can always come true, but in fact, sometimes, we can't achieve our goals. For example, I read in the news yesterday that an Australian girl with Down syndrome wants to be a supermodel. Her mom just tells her that she can do whatever she wants, as long as she works hard. I'm sure everyone knows that she might not be able to realise her dream, but telling a white lie here is essential.

词汇 Key Words

while lie 善意的谎言 hurt one's feelings 伤害某人的感情 Down syndrome 唐氏综合征 ; realise one's dream 实现某人的梦想

# Do you think lying is a crime?

A: Well, it depends on what kind of lies you tell. If it's just a white lie, like the ones I talked about just now, it's definitely not a crime—because if it were, many people who mean to do a good deed would be in prison. However, if you cheat other people into buying your bogus products, it's kind of a crime I suppose. Also, if you tell lies in order to get out of paying taxes, you should definitely be punished.

#### 词汇 Key Words

do a good deed 做一件好事 in prison 坐牢 cheat sb. into doing sth. 欺骗某人做某事

bogus ['bəugəs] *adj.* 假的 get out of paying taxes 逃税 ( = avoid paying taxes)

## Do changes always lead to a positive result?

A: Not necessarily. Sometimes, the results of a change are positive. For instance, you move to another city where the traffic is much better than your previous city and you tend to be in a better mood on the way to and from work all the time. However, at times, you don't always get what you want. We often hear stories where some people quit their jobs and find work at another company, only to find that they can't fit in there. Although they might earn a bigger salary, I don't think they would be happy that way.



not necessarily 不一定 previous **['pri:vɪəs]** *adj.* 之前的 be in a good/bad/better mood 心情好 / 不好 / 更好 on the way to and from work 在上下班的路上 find work 找到工作 earn a big salary 赚一笔不错的薪水 that way 那样的话

#### Why is it difficult for some people to make a change in their lives?

A: Well, there could be tons of reasons. The first one that comes to mind is that they're afraid of change. You know, for some people, their life is already pretty good and in that case, they just don't wanna change the status quo because they fear that they might lose everything. If you live a decent life and someone tells you that you can make a fortune if you invest in a small company, but there's a chance that you might end up losing all your money, I guess it would be pretty hard to make that decision, right? To be honest, in my view, this is pretty understandable and um, I would probably choose not to make that change. Um, sorry, I don't think I can think of another reason at the moment.

#### 词汇 Key Words

status quo 现状

live a decent life 过体面的生活 make a fortune 赚一大笔钱 invest in a company 投资一个公司 there's a chance that... 有一种……的可能 understandable [∧ndə'stændəbl] *adj*. 可以 理解的

# Media, TV, news

**Q** Do you think negative information in the news will have a negative influence on people?

A: Yes, I think so. The coverage of some negative information really has an adverse effect on people's everyday lives. Let me give you a couple of examples. For starters, there has always been some news about



plane crashes and because of this, some people have become much more apprehensive when they fly somewhere. Plus, from what I've read before, if there's a lot of news about car accidents, then it's likely that there will be even more of them within a short period of time. Sorry, I've forgotten why. But of course, some people claim that negative information never affects them, even subconsciously. I believe that may be true too.

#### 词汇 Key Words

the coverage of... 对……的报道 have an adverse effect on... 对……有不良影响 plane crash 飞机失事 apprehensive [æprr'hensɪv] adj. 担心的; 忧虑的 within a short period of time 在很短的时间内 subconsciously [,sʌb'kɒnʃəslɪ] *adv.* 在潜意识 层面

#### Q: How are television programmes now different from those in the past?

A: Well, I think there have been quite a lot of changes. For starters, there have been many more entertainment programmes such as variety shows, talk shows and talent shows. By contrast, in the past, say 30 or 40 years ago, the vast majority of what we could see on TV were news programmes. Another difference is that there are loads of programmes every day on health now. I suppose it's because modern people generally lead a sedentary lifestyle and are not as active as before, and therefore we are less fit. Health programmes are very important in today's society.

#### 词汇 Key Words

variety shows 综艺节目 talk shows 脱口秀 the vast majority of... 绝大多数…… lead a sedentary lifestyle 过一种久坐不动的生活

not as active as before 没有过去那么活跃

#### Q: How do TV programmes affect people?

A: Well, I believe they have an effect on people in various ways. The most obvious is that TV programmes help us pass the time and unwind. In my case, I'm fanatical about some reality shows like *Running Man* as well as *Dad, Where Are We Going* which enjoy great popularity in China. They help me take my mind off things and I feel relaxed when watching them. Plus, some programmes are educational and not only can school children gain a great deal of knowledge from them, but adults can learn something from certain programmes too. Of course, those that feature violence may have an adverse effect on kids and teenagers.

#### 词汇 Key Words

enjoy great popularity 广受欢迎 educational [,edʒʊ'keɪʃənl] adj. 有教育意义的 feature ['fi:tʃə(r)] v. 以……为特色 violence ['vaɪələns] n. 暴力

# **IELTS** 雅思口语真经总纲

在文化传播领域属于跨文化交流;从教学 法上定义属于针对性训练;按照测试学理论 属于考前有的放矢的科学准备;从实践经验 上说,贯穿了丰富的经验和深厚的底蕴。

直经流派

学过总纲 ● 考试不慌 ● 背过考点 ● 提笔就填 ● 做过真经 ● 一战搞定



真经体系

- 芝文 听说读写四项均具有"总纲",讲解命题规律、备考经验、自学心法;高度凝练,具有战略指导意义。
- **直 经** 为历届真题及答案大全,源自题库,实战分析,强化训练,是经典实战演练手册。
- 😤 点 对于听力和阅读这样的"客观题",均配有独门"考点词"。归纳考点,揭秘答案,浓缩经验,出奇制胜。

加入雅思口语真经训练营 老师全程辅导答疑 微信号: xwgvip9999 扫码享本书配套音频



策划编辑:李 宏 倪拉拉 责任编辑:朱 妍 封面设计:道乐文化

